CAESAR DE BELLO GALLICO

BOOKS I-III.

J. H. MERRYWEATHER

AND

C. C. TANCOCK.

RIVINGTONS

English School-Classics

EDITED BY FRANCIS STORR, M.A.,

CHIEF MASTER OF MODERN SUBJECTS IN MERCHANT TAYLORS' SCHOOL.

Small 8vo.

THOMSON'S SEASONS: Winter.
With an Introduction to the Series. By the Rev. J. F. BRIGHT. *1s.*

COWPER'S TASK. By FRANCIS STORR, M.A *2s.*
Part I. (Book I.—The Sofa; Book II.—The Timepiece) *9d.* Part II. (Book III.—The Garden; Book IV.—The Winter Evening) *9d.* Part III. (Book V.—The Winter Morning Walk; Book VI.—The Winter Walk at Noon) *9d.*

SCOTT'S LAY OF THE LAST MINSTREL.
By J. SURTEES PHILLPOTTS, M.A., Head-Master of Bedford Grammar School. *2s. 6d.*; or in Four Parts, *9d.* each.

SCOTT'S LADY OF THE LAKE.
By R. W. TAYLOR, M.A., Head-Master of Kelly College, Tavistock. *2s.*; or in Three Parts, *9d.* each.

NOTES TO SCOTT'S WAVERLEY.
By H. W. EVE, M.A. *1s.*; WAVERLEY AND NOTES, *2s. 6d.*

TWENTY OF BACON'S ESSAYS. By FRANCIS STORR, M.A. *1s.*

SIMPLE POEMS.
By W. E. MULLINS, M.A., Assistant-Master at Marlborough College. *8d.*

SELECTIONS FROM WORDSWORTH'S POEMS.
By H. H. TURNER, B.A., late Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge. *1s.*

WORDSWORTH'S EXCURSION: The Wanderer.
By H. H. TURNER, B.A. *1s.*

MILTON'S PARADISE LOST. By FRANCIS STORR, M.A.
Book I. *9d.* Book II. *9d.*

MILTON'S L'ALLEGRO, IL PENSEROSO, AND LYCIDAS.
By EDWARD STORR, M.A., late Scholar of New College, Oxford. *1s.*

SELECTIONS FROM THE SPECTATOR.
By OSMUND AIRY, M.A., late Assistant-Master at Wellington College. *1s.*

BROWNE'S RELIGIO MEDICI.
By W. P. SMITH, M.A., Assistant-Master at Winchester College. *1s.*

GOLDSMITH'S TRAVELLER AND DESERTED VILLAGE.
By C. SANKEY, M.A., Assistant-Master at Marlborough College. *1s.*

EXTRACTS from GOLDSMITH'S VICAR OF WAKEFIELD.
By C. SANKEY, M.A. *1s.*

POEMS SELECTED from the WORKS OF ROBERT BURNS.
By A. M. BELL, M.A., Balliol College, Oxford. *2s.*

MACAULAY'S ESSAYS:
MOORE'S LIFE OF BYRON. By FRANCIS STORR, M.A. *9d.*
BOSWELL'S LIFE OF JOHNSON. By FRANCIS STORR, M.A. *9d.*
HALLAM'S CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY. By H. F. BOYD, late Scholar of Brasenose College, Oxford. *1s.*

SOUTHEY'S LIFE OF NELSON. *2s. 6d.*
By W. E. MULLINS, M.A.

GRAY'S POEMS, [illegible] **ND SELEC-**
TIONS from GRA[illegible] M.A. *1s.*

Rivingtons [illegible] ge.

Rivington's Mathematical Series

Small 8vo.

By J. HAMBLIN SMITH, M.A.,

OF GONVILLE AND CAIUS COLLEGE, AND LATE LECTURER AT ST. PETER'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

Algebra. Part I. 3*s.* Without Answers, 2*s.* 6*d.* A KEY, 9*s.*

Exercises on Algebra. Part I. 2*s.* 6*d.*

[Copies may be had without the Answers.]

Elementary Trigonometry. 4*s.* 6*d.* A KEY, 7*s.* 6*d.*

Elements of Geometry.

Containing Books 1 to 6, and portions of Books 11 and 12 of EUCLID, with Exercises and Notes. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Part I., containing Books 1 and 2 of EUCLID, may be had separately. *Limp cloth*, 1*s.* 6*d.*

Elementary Hydrostatics. 3*s.* } A KEY, 6*s.*

Elementary Statics. 3*s.* }

Arithmetic. 3*s.* 6*d.* A KEY, 9*s.*

Book of Enunciations

FOR HAMBLIN SMITH'S GEOMETRY, ALGEBRA, TRIGONOMETRY, STATICS, AND HYDROSTATICS. 1*s.*

Elementary Heat.

By E. J. GROSS, M.A.,

FELLOW OF GONVILLE AND CAIUS COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE, AND SECRETARY TO THE OXFORD AND CAMBRIDGE SCHOOLS EXAMINATION BOARD.

Crown 8vo.

Algebra. Part II. 8*s.* 6*d.*

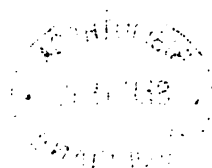
Kinematics and Kinetics. 5*s.* 6*d.*

By G. RICHARDSON, M.A.,

ASSISTANT-MASTER AT WINCHESTER COLLEGE, AND LATE FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

Crown 8vo.

Geometrical Conic Sections. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Rivingtons: London, Oxford, and Cambridge.

CAESAR

DE BELLO GALLICO

BOOKS I. TO III.

WITH PREFACE, INTRODUCTIONS, MAPS, PLANS, GRAMMATICAL, HISTORICAL, AND GEOGRAPHICAL NOTES INDICES, GRAMMATICAL APPENDICES, ETC.

EDITED BY

J. H. MERRYWEATHER, M.A.

AND

C. C. TANCOCK, M.A.

ASSISTANT-MASTERS AT CHARTERHOUSE

RIVINGTONS

WATERLOO PLACE, LONDON

Oxford and Cambridge

MDCCCLXXIX

PREFACE.

Our text is that of the last edition of Kraner's "Caesar" (edited by Dittenberger: Berlin, 1877); we have, however, for convenience of reference, altered the numbering of the sections of chapters to correspond with that of the Oxford Pocket Classics edition. Kraner's excellent notes, also, and prolegomena have been of great use to us; and for the sites of battlefields, routes, and other geographical questions, Napoleon III.'s "Julius Caesar" has supplied us with valuable details. For our Historical Introduction and Biographical and Geographical Indices we have made use of the histories of Arnold, Ihne, Mommsen, and Merivale, and articles, mainly by Mr. G. Long, in Smith's Dictionaries of Classical Biography and Geography. In matters of grammar we have constantly referred to the last edition of the "Public School Latin Primer" (1878); frequently, also, though rather for the convenience of the teacher than of the pupil, to both Madvig's and Roby's Latin Grammars.

We especially wish to thank H. J. Roby, Esq., for the help which he has given us on certain points of grammar about which we ventured to ask his opinion; also A. M. Curteis, Esq., and the Rev. O. W. Tancock, for their great kindness in looking over our proofs, and for the many useful suggestions they have made.

J. H. M.
C. C. T.

CHARTERHOUSE, *Sept.* 1879.

INTRODUCTION.

I. *Gaul and its relations with Rome.*

§ 1. One of the most interesting chapters in the History of Rome by the German historian Mommsen is devoted to what he calls the subjugation of the West, and the results of Caesar's conquests in Gaul. He tells us that "the political annihilation" of the Celtic nation "had been completed by Caesar; its national annihilation was begun." Caesar "gained for the Hellenic-Italian culture the interval necessary to civilize the West, just as it had already civilized the East;" "the enlargement of the historical horizon of Rome by the expeditions of Caesar beyond the Alps was as much an event in the world's history as the exploring of America by European bands." Who were these "Celts"? and what was this country "beyond the Alps"?

§ 2. The word *Gallia* in the time of C. Julius Caesar was a very unsettled term, of varying application: for

(1) It was used sometimes (*e.g.* Cic. *ad Fam.* xii. 5, *totam Galliam tenebamus*) of the country bounded on the north by the Alps and on the south by Etruria and Umbria, and including the extensive and fertile basin of the Po (Padus). This country, which was more generally known as *Gallia Citerior*, *Gallia Cisalpina*, or *Gallia Togata* (the Gaul whose people wore the Roman *toga*), had by Caesar's time become very largely Romanized, and is even included by him in a geographical

Gallia Citerior.

sense, though not of course politically, under the name of *Italia* (*B. G.* i. 10, 3; ii. 35, 2).

(2) The strip of country which extended from the south-west of the Alps along the coast of the Mediterranean to the Pyrenees, and which in Caesar's time was already a Roman province, was often known by the name of *Gallia Narbonensis* (from Narbo, one of its chief towns) or *Gallia Provincia:* though more commonly Caesar calls it simply *Provincia* (hence the modern *Provence*), and distinguishes Gallia in senses (3) and (4) from it. Another name for this country was *Gallia Ulterior*, though this again was often used of the whole of Gaul north and west of the Alps.

Gallia Provincia.

(3) All the mainland westward of the Alps and the Rhine *with the exception of Gallia Narbonensis* is often called by Caesar *Gallia.* Thus, in i. 1, 1, he uses it in this sense (*Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres*): so also in i. 30, 3. This was sometimes called *Gallia Comata* (Cic. *Phil.* viii. 9), *i.e.* the Gaul whose people wore long hair, in distinction from *Gallia Togata:* see above (1).

Gallia Comata.

(4) Often, however, Caesar uses the names *Gallia* and *Galli*, in a more restricted sense, of the land and people of the Celtae, excluding, that is to say, from this name the Belgae (whom indeed he considers to be of German origin, ii. 4, 1, where see note), and the Aquitani, as well as the Roman province (i. 1, 1; ii. 3, 1).

Gallia Celtica.

The two last significations of the word are both very frequent in Caesar, and as he often passes from one to the other in the same chapter, or even in the same section (i. 1, 1; ii. 1), it requires some care and attention to distinguish between them.

§ 3. Using, however, the words Gauls and Gaul in

their widest sense, as including all these four meanings, we must very briefly trace their previous connection with Rome in order to understand why Caesar was appointed to the governorship of the provinces of Gaul (Gallia Cisalpina and Gallia Narbonensis), and why he was anxious to declare war against the extra-provincial Gauls.

Occupation of North Italy by Gauls.

§ 4. If we may trust the account given us by Livy (v. 34) it was as early as the reign of king Tarquinius Priscus (*i.e.* about 600 B.C.) that the first great immigration of Gallic tribes across the Alps took place. Large numbers from various tribes—Bituriges, Arverni, Senones, Aedui, and others, names afterwards well known to us from Caesar—crossed the Alps, and settled at first in the basins of the Po and its tributary streams, where they founded Mediolanum (Milan). Others soon penetrated further south across the Po, and occupied the territory between the Apennines and the Adriatic. The Senones advanced the furthest, occupying the sea-coast of Umbria almost as far south as Ancona. Whether Livy's chronology is correct or not, and Dr. Arnold (*Hist. of Rome*, cap. xxiv.) points out that there is great room for doubt on this head, it is at any rate clear that the occupation had been made by the tribes, which Livy describes, at some period before the beginning of the fourth century B.C.

Burning of Rome.

§ 5. In the year 390 B.C. the Senones crossed the Apennines in hope of plunder; for the romantic story given us by Livy (v. 33, etc.) bears evident traces of late invention: and after showing themselves before the walls of Clusium in Etruria (the modern Chiusi), prepared to march down the valley of the Tiber upon Rome. They crossed over to its eastern bank, and had advanced within twelve miles of Rome before the terrified Romans were able to oppose them with an army. Here, on the 18th of July (a. d. XV. Kal. Sextiles), a memorable battle took place on the

banks of a small stream, the Allia, in which the Romans were utterly cut to pieces, a very small fragment of the army escaping to the city. The anniversary of this battle (*dies Alliensis*) was always remembered as an unlucky day, on which no business might be transacted.[1] The panic at Rome was very great. Many of the citizens left the city; the Vestal Virgins and the priest of the god Quirinus were sent away for safety to Caere; and when, on the third day after the battle, the Gauls marched to the city, they found the main part of it undefended and deserted. Only the Capitol, like the Acropolis of Athens at the time of the Persian invasion (B.C. 480), was placed in a state of defence. The siege of the Capitol must have lasted for some time, but with this the details preserved by Roman historians again become fabulous and incredible. The story is full of poetical embellishments. We learn from it how the senators were slaughtered as they sat in their ivory chairs; how the sacred geese in the Capitol by their cackling woke M. Manlius, and how he hurled down from the top of the rocks the foremost Gaul, who had just scaled the hill. The Gauls under Brennus were at last bought off by payment of a heavy ransom: and so the danger passed away for the time.

Battle of the Allia.

§ 6. Between 370 and 340 we find that there must have been various inroads of Gauls into Latium, the account of which has come down to us chiefly in picturesque legends, all tending to the fame of the great Roman families. To this period belong the stories of T. Manlius, who fought a Gallic giant on the bridge over the Anio, and gained his name of Torquatus from a *torques*, or chain of gold, which he took from his enemy's neck: and of M. Valerius, on whose helmet a crow (*corvus*) perched, and flying into the face of the Gaul his opponent pecked his eyes, so

Legend of Titus Manlius Torquatus.

[1] Cp. Lucan, *Pharsalia*, vii. 409, "*et damnata diu Romanis Allia fastis.*" Cp. Virg. *Aen.* vii. 717.

that Valerius gained the name of Corvinus. Twice the Gauls are said to have advanced close under the walls of Rome, and twice to have been repulsed. L. Furius Camillus is said to have finally conquered and driven them back beyond the Apennines in 349.

Legend of Valerius Corvinus.

§ 7. Again, between 295 and 282, the Romans and the Gauls came into collision. About this time the Gallic states seem to have made fresh migrations. It was then that a large body of them made an attack upon Asia Minor, and succeeded in founding a Celtic state in the interior, which became known as Gallia or Galatia. These same migrations set the Italian Gauls again in motion. Availing themselves of a time when the Romans were engaged in warfare with the Samnites and the Etruscans, they made fresh inroads across the Apennines, and defeated the Romans under L. Cornelius Scipio at Camerinum. Later, however, in the same year (295), the Romans defeated the Gauls in a great battle at Sentinum, in Umbria, on the edge of the Apennines, which drove them back, so that, as Polybius tells us (ii. 19), they remained quiet for ten years. In 285 (Ihne) or 283 (Arnold) they had sufficiently recovered the effects of this disaster to invade Etruria and defeat the Romans at Arretium (modern Arrezzo) so decisively, that L. Metellus (the consul), seven military tribunes, and thirteen thousand men, were killed on the field. The Romans soon, however, retrieved their fortunes by a great victory over the Senones, and shortly after over their neighbours the Boii at the Vadimonian Lake near the Tiber. These successes the Romans followed up by an inroad into the country of the Senones, and by the foundation of their first military colony in that district, called Sena Gallica (modern Sinigaglia), a step which was followed a few years later by the establishment of Ariminum (modern Rimini) in 268. Not-

Battles of Camerinum and Sentinum.

Battle of Arretium.

Battle of the Vadimonian Lake.

withstanding this, which must have been to the Gauls an ominous sign of the future policy of Rome, we are told that, after the victory of the Vadimonian Lake, the Gauls remained quiet for forty-five years.

§ 8. All through the first Punic war (263—241), when the Romans were occupied in and about Sicily and North Africa, the Gauls made no separate attack upon them, partly because of their recent defeat, but partly also, probably, because many of them were serving as mercenaries in the Carthaginian army.

First Punic war.

§ 9. As soon as this was over, renewed movements took place in Gaul. In 238, we are told, the Boii invited fresh bands of Gauls across the Alps, and threatened Ariminum, a danger only averted by quarrels between the new-comers and their hosts. This was enough, however, to arouse the fears and excite the ambition of Rome. Whilst the peace between herself and Carthage still lasted, she determined to strengthen her northern frontiers, and to reduce the strength of the Gauls. These also saw that a fresh war must decide the relative power of the two nations. Accordingly, in 225, the Boii and the Insubres formed an alliance with the other Cisalpine Gauls (except the Cenomanni, who joined Rome), and obtained help from the Transalpine tribes. Then, with a band of fifty thousand foot and twenty thousand mounted men or charioteers, eluding the Roman army, they marched southwards, to Clusium. Here they were on the point of defeating the Romans, when the sudden arrival of a fresh consular army from Sardinia, under Regulus, changed the position of affairs. The Gauls were defeated in an important engagement near Telamon, on the west coast of Etruria, and driven back across the Apennines. The next year, 223, the consuls crossed into the country of the Insubres, and conquered them. In 222, M. Claudius Marcellus, the consul, slew in single combat the Gallic chieftain Britomardus or Viridomarus, and

Battle of Telamon.

won the *Spolia Opima* for the third time in Roman history. In this year Mediolanum (Milân), the capital of the Gauls, was captured: and Rome soon afterwards still further established her supremacy by the foundation of two important colonies in the basin of the Po, Placentia (Piacenza) and Cremona (Cremona). In 220 the *Via Flaminia* was made, connecting Rome with Ariminum, the first Roman road which crossed the Apennines, and joined the east and west of Italy together. With each year Roman influence was spreading more and more in the country which had before been entirely under the power of the Gauls. Its extension was violently interrupted, however, by the second Punic war, which Rome waged between 218 and 202 against Hannibal and the Carthaginians. Many of the Cisalpine Gauls fought in Hannibal's army, and the Romans were obliged to keep strong garrisons throughout this period in their military colonies in Gaul. As soon as the war with Hannibal was over, fighting commenced again, between 198 and 192, and the Gauls were again defeated by the Romans. In 192, Scipio Nasica finally destroyed the power of the Boii. In 189, Bononia (Bologna) was made a Roman colony, and six years later Parma and Mutina (Modena). From this time onward Gallia Cisalpina was practically a Roman province.

Roman colonisation.

§ 10. Meanwhile Rome had learned that the Alps were no sufficient barrier against invasion, and had accordingly begun to turn her thoughts to conquests across the Alps, as before across the Apennines. In 154 an opportunity was offered, which she eagerly seized. Massilia (Marseilles), a Greek colony founded in the sixth century B.C., had long been friendly with the Romans, to whom she trusted for defence against her barbarous neighbours. She now appealed to Rome for aid against attack from the Gauls. Rome sent aid, but apparently did no more at that time. In 126, however, once again

The Romans cross the Alps.

the people of Massilia begged for Roman aid against a Gallic tribe, the Salyes or Salluvii; and at the same time the Aedui, who had before been received into friendship with the Romans, were attacked by the Allobroges and the Arverni. The Romans sent an army across the Alps, and gained important victories under Cn. Domitius Ahenobarbus and Q. Fabius Maximus Allobrogicus. Shortly afterwards the first Roman colony in Transalpine Gaul was founded at Aquae Sextiae (Aix), followed soon after by Narbo (Narbonne); and about 122 the Provincia, or Province of Gallia Narbonensis, was formed.

Formation of the Provincia.

§ 11. The next important disturbance between the Gauls and Romans was caused by fresh inroads of wandering tribes. The Cimbri, who were probably Gauls, had joined forces with the Teutones, who were probably Germans in search of new homes, and about the year 113 they met and defeated the Roman general Cn. Papirius Carbo in Noricum. Instead of marching southward to Italy, they next crossed to the western side of the Rhine, from which they threatened the Roman province. In 109 they again defeated a Roman army under M. Junius Silanus, and in 107, in conjunction with the Tigurini (a canton of the Helvetii, cp. i. 12, 5-7), they surprised and cut to pieces the troops under L. Cassius Longinus in the country of the Helvetii. Nor was this the end of the Roman disasters. Yet again, in 105, on the banks of the Rhone, the Cimbri cut off a detachment of troops under M. Aemilius Scaurus, whom they took prisoner and put to death; and immediately after, at Arausio (Orange), defeated and utterly destroyed the combined forces of Q. Servilius Coepio and M. Aurelius Scaurus. Eighty thousand Roman soldiers are said to have perished in this battle; and the excitement and alarm were intense. At this crisis the people turned their thoughts to C. Marius, who had just brought the

The Cimbri and Teutones.

war in Africa against Jugurtha to a successful close. He was elected, notwithstanding the law, as consul for five years in succession (104—101), and at once marched northward against the invaders. In 102, the Teutones, who had separated from the Cimbri, and made their way into the Province, were met by Marius and defeated at Aquae Sextiae (Aix); and in the following year the Cimbri, who had crossed the Alps, met the same fate at the Campi Raudii, near Vercellae, and were cut to pieces. Each victory was decisive, and the two invading hordes were annihilated. Rome was once more saved from the Gauls.

Battle of Aquae Sextiae.

§ 12. After this, until the time of Caesar's campaign, we hear but little of disturbances with the Gauls. The movements amongst them which were the immediate cause of Caesar's being appointed governor of the provinces of Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul, and of the war which began in 58 B.C., were twofold.

(1) The Helvetii, dwelling in the narrow space between Mount Jura and the Alps, felt their territory to be too small for their growing population. They were, moreover, constantly in danger of encroachments from the south-west by the Romans of the Province, and from the north-east by the German tribes, who were about this time trying to force their way at all parts across the Rhine. Under these circumstances Orgetorix, one of their leading men, had for some years been endeavouring to bring about a general migration of the Helvetii westward. After his fall the Helvetii resolved still to carry out his plans, and sent to ask leave to pass through the Roman territory. Caesar, wanting war for the furtherance of his own political aims (cp. § 18), and eager to extend Roman power, saw his opportunity. Leave was refused, and strong preventive measures were taken; and when the Helvetii took the only other route open to them through the country of the Sequani, they were

Helvetian migration.

pursued, attacked, defeated, and obliged to resettle in their original country.

(2) It seems, from various authorities, that about this time various German tribes, the chief of whom were the Suebi, or the "wanderers," were moving rapidly westward, and having reached the Rhine were anxiously seeking opportunities to cross it and establish themselves among their more civilized neighbours the Gauls. Already several tribes had made good their footing in Gaul, when, shortly before 58, an opportunity was given to the Suebi and their king Ariovistus to do the same. For some time the Arverni and their allies the Sequani had been struggling for supremacy in Central Gaul against the Aedui. At last, the Arverni had invited Ariovistus over to help them. As with the Saxons in England, those who were called in to help remained to conquer. Ariovistus had already seized two-thirds of the territory of the Sequani, and had made them completely subject to him, when they, with the co-operation of their former rivals the Aedui, already the allies of Rome, begged for the aid of Caesar against the Germans. Again this interference was just what Caesar desired, and no sooner was his campaign against the Helvetii ended, than he undertook another against these Germans.

German invasion.

II. *Life of Caesar until B.C.* 58.

§ 13. GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR, the conqueror of Gaul, was born, according to the generally received view, in B.C. 100. He was the son of C. Julius, whose sister had married the great C. Marius. Brought up during the civil wars between Sulla and Marius, his sympathies naturally lay with the party of his uncle, whose conquests over the dreaded Cimbri and Teutones at Vercellae and Aquae Sextiae (cp. § 11) must undoubtedly have made a

His youth.

great impression upon his young nephew Caesar. Already, before his death in 86, Marius had appointed his nephew, when only fourteen, priest of Jupiter (*flamen dialis*). In 83, though he had been betrothed by his father to Cossutia, Caesar married Cornelia, the daughter of L. Cinna, who was the chief opponent of L. Sulla. The next year, when Sulla had made himself master in Rome, Caesar received his command to divorce his wife, a command which he boldly refused to obey. He fled from Rome, and Sulla after much hesitation consented to pardon him.

Exile.

§ 14. In the year 80 we find Caesar serving with distinction in the Roman army under M. Minucius Thermus against pirates in the Aegean Sea, and taking part in a mission to Nicomedes king of Bithynia. Fighting before Mitylene he received the honour of the civic crown for saving the life of a Roman citizen.

In 78, when Sulla was dead, he returned to Rome; and soon attracted notice as a bold and skilful orator. He attacked, though unsuccessfully, Cn. Dolabella, one of Sulla's party, for extortion during his government of the province of Macedonia.

In 76 he started for Rhodes to study oratory, and on his way is said to have met with a strange adventure amongst pirates in the Aegean. He was taken prisoner and detained by them for some thirty-eight days, and only ransomed for a large sum of money. He shortly after, as the story goes on to say, fitted out an armed force against them and captured them. He remained at Rhodes for two years.

Supports the popular party.

§ 15. From 74 to 62 he remained for the most part in Rome, gradually working his way into favour with the people, and securing political importance as one of the chief men of the popular party. In 70 he gave his support to the great changes which Cn. Pompeius introduced into the constitution as established by Sulla, all of which tende-

life which Rome gained by the establishment of the Empire under Caesar's nephew and heir Augustus—an Empire which survived, through various strange vicissitudes, in unbroken historical succession until the abdication of the Hapsburg Emperor Francis II. in 1806.

principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur, persuadet eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat. Perfacile factu esse illis 5 probat conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset: non esse dubium, quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent; se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum confirmat. Hac oratione adducti inter se fidem et jusjurandum dant 6 et regno occupato per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

4. Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata. Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinclis causam dicere coëgerunt; damnatum poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. Die constituta causae dictionis Orgetorix 2 ad judicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coëgit et omnes clientes obaeratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit; per eos, ne causam diceret, se eripuit. Cum 3 civitas ob eam rem incitata armis jus suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

The Helvetii continue preparations for their expedition, and propose to take the route through the Roman province.

5. Post ejus mortem nihilo minus Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant. Ubi jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, 2 oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt, frumentum omne, praeterquam quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut domum reditionis spe sublata paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent, trium mensum molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre jubent. Persuadent 3 Rauricis et Tulingis et Latovicis finitimis, uti eodem usi consilio oppidis suis vicisque exustis una cum iis proficiscantur, Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant

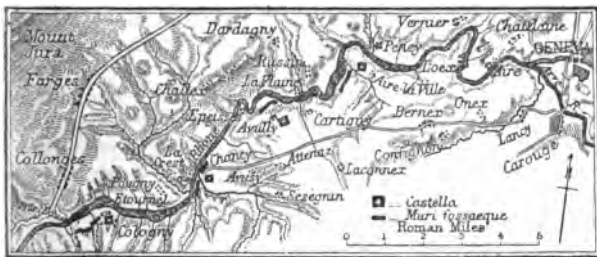
et in agrum Noricum transierant Noreiamque oppugnarant, receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.

6. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent: unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carri ducerentur; mons autem altissimus impendebat, ut facile perpauci prohibere possent: alterum per provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter finis Helvetiorum et Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nonnullis
2 locis vado transitur. Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvetiorum finibus Genava. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros, quod nondum bono animo in populum Romanum viderentur, existimabant, vel vi coacturos, ut
3 per suos fines eos ire paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatis diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant. Is dies erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr. L. Pisone, A. Gabinio consulibus.

The news brings Caesar to Gaul. He fortifies the left bank of the Rhone, and refuses the Helvetii passage through the Province.

7. Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem
2 contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una), pontem, qui erat
3 ad Genavam, jubet rescindi. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt nobilissimos civitatis, cujus legationis Nammeius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinebant, qui dicerent, sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter haberent nullum: rogare,
4 ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoria tenebat, L. Cassium consulem occisum exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub jugum mis-

sum, concedendum non putabat; neque homines inimico animo data facultate per provinciam itineris faciundi temperaturos ab injuria et maleficio existimabat. Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites, quos imperaverat, convenirent, legatis respondit, diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum: si quid vellent, ad Id. April. reverterentur.

FORTIFICATION OF THE RHONE VALLEY.

8. Interea ea legione, quam secum habebat, militibusque, qui ex provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, milia passuum decem novem murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim fossamque perducit. Eo opere perfecto praesidia disponit, castella communit, quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere possit. 2 Ubi ea dies, quam constituerat cum legatis, venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat se more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare et, si vim facere conentur, prohibiturum ostendit. 3 Helvetii ea spe dejecti navibus junctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnumquam interdiu, saepius noctu, si perrumpere possent, conati operis munitione et militum concursu et telis repulsi hoc conatu destiterunt. 4

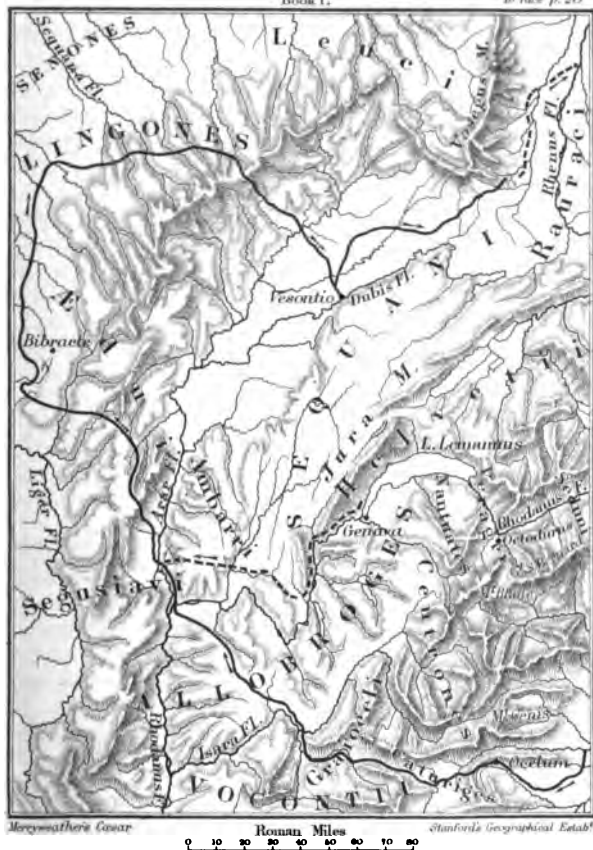
The Helvetii get permission from the Sequani to pass through their territory. Caesar, nevertheless, under pretext that the inroad endangered the Province, raises fresh levies in North Italy, and leading them over the Alps, marches rapidly through the Province, and northwards over the Rhone.

9. Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua Sequanis
2 invitis propter angustias ire non poterant. His cum sua sponte persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt, ut eo deprecatore a Sequanis
3 impetrarent. Dumnorix gratia et largitione apud Sequanos plurimum poterat et Helvetiis erat amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat, et cupiditate regni adductus novis rebus studebat et quam plurimas civitates suo beneficio habere
4 obstrictas volebat. Itaque rem suscipit et a Sequanis impetrat, ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti inter sese dent, perficit: Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant, Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuria transeant.

10. Caesari renuntiatur, Helvetiis esse in animo, per agrum Sequanorum et Aeduorum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt,
2 quae civitas est in provincia. Id si fieret, intellegebat magno cum periculo provinciae futurum, ut homines bellicosos, populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus
3 maximeque frumentariis finitimos haberet. Ob eas causas ei munitioni, quam fecerat, T. Labienum legatum praefecit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit duasque ibi legiones conscribit et tres, quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit et, qua proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his
4 quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutrones et Graioceli et Caturiges locis superioribus occupatis iti-
5 nere exercitum prohibere conantur. Compluribus his proeliis pulsis ab Ocelo, quod est citerioris provinciae extremum, in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciae die septimo pervenit: inde in Allobrogum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiavos exercitum ducit.

GENERAL MAP OF THE CAMPAIGN OF THE YEAR 696

Book I.

To face p. 20

Rivingtons : London, Oxford & Cambridge.

The Aedui, in whose country the Helvetii had arrived, and the Allobroges apply to Caesar for aid. He resolves to act at once.

11. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui, cum se suaque 2 ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium: Ita se omni tempore de populo 3 Romano meritos esse, ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri agri vastari, liberi eorum in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint. Eodem tempore 4 Aedui Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Aeduorum, Caesarem certiorem faciunt, sese depopulatis agris non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere. Item Allo- 5 broges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se ad Caesarem recipiunt et demonstrant, sibi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliqui. Quibus re- 6 bus adductus Caesar non exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis in Santones Helvetii pervenirent.

As the Helvetii are crossing the Saône, Caesar overtakes them, and cuts to pieces a division of their army.

12. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, judicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus junctis transibant. Ubi 2 per exploratores Caesar certior factus est, tres jam partes copiarum Helvetios id flumen traduxisse, quartam fere partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse, de tertia vigilia cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus magnam 3 partem eorum concidit: reliqui sese fugae mandarunt atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt. Is pagus appella- 4 batur Tigurinus: nam omnis Helvetia in quattuor pagos divisa est. Hic pagus unus, cum domo exisset patrum 5 nostrorum memoria, L. Cassium consulem interfecerat

6 et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita sive casu sive consilio deorum immortalium, quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem populo Romano intu-
7 lerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit. Qua in re Caesar non solum publicas, sed etiam privatas injurias ultus est, quod ejus soceri L. Pisonis avum, L. Pisonem legatum, Tigurini eodem proelio, quo Cassium interfecerant.

The Helvetii ask for peace, reminding Caesar of the defeats they had formerly inflicted on the Roman forces.

13. Hoc proelio facto reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat atque
2 ita exercitum traducit. Helvetii repentino ejus adventu commoti, cum id, quod ipsi diebus xx aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intelligerent, legatos ad eum mittunt; cujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetio-
3 rum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare egit: Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset: sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et
4 pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus esset, cum ii, qui flumen transissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret. Se ita a patribus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute contenderent, quam dolo aut insidiis niterentur.
5 Quare ne committeret, ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Romani et internicione exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam proderet.

Caesar requires hostages and reparation for injuries done to th allies of Rome. The negotiations are broken off.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret, atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent: qui si

alicujus injuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptum, quod neque commissum a se intellegeret, quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, 2 num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod eo invito iter per provinciam per vim temptassent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoriam deponere posse? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter 3 gloriarentur, quodque tam diu se impune tulisse injurias admirarentur, eodem pertinere. Consuesse enim 4 deos immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsides ab iis 5 sibi dentur, uti ea, quae polliceantur, facturos intellegat, et si Aeduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum. Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios 6 a majoribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare consuerint: ejus rei populum Romanum esse testem.

Caesar's Gallic cavalry is worsted in a skirmish: he pursues the enemy cautiously, without fighting.

15. Hoc responso dato discessit. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit, qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti alieno loco 2 cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo proelio sublati Helvetii, 3 quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere nonnunquam et novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacessere coeperunt. Caesar suos a proelio continebat ac satis habebat in 4 praesentia hostem rapinis, pabulationibus populationibusque prohibere. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter 5

fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinis aut senis milibus passuum interesset.

The Aedui being dilatory in supplying the Roman army with corn, Caesar asks the reason from Divitiacus and Liscus, who explain that the delay is due to the intrigues of Dumnorix, brother of Divitiacus.

16. Interim cotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum, quod
2 essent publice polliciti, flagitare. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat: eo autem frumento, quod flumine Arare navibus subvexerat, propterea minus uti poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat.
3 Diem ex die ducere Aedui: conferri, comportari, adesse
4 dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his Divitiaco et Lisco, qui summo magistratui praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aedui, qui creatur annuus et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem, graviter eos accusat, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus ab iis non sublevetur; praesertim cum magna ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit, multo etiam gravius, quod sit destitutus, queritur.

17. Tum demum Liscus oratione Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim
2 plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum conferant, quod debeant: praestare si jam principatum Galliae obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre; neque dubitare, quin si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua

Gallia Aeduis libertatem sint erepturi. Ab eisdem nos- 3
tra consilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus enuntiari: hos a se coërceri non posse. Quin etiam, quod 4
necessariam rem coactus Caesari enuntiarit, intellegere sese, quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diu potuerit, tacuisse.

18. Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designari sentiebat, sed, quod pluribus praesentibus eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex solo ea, quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vera: 2
Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum. Compluris annos portoria reliquaque omnia Aeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse et facultates 3
ad largiendum magnas comparasse; magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu semper alere et circum se habere, neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse, atque hujus potentiae causa matrem in Biturigibus homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse, ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere, sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitates collocasse. Favere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam 4
affinitatem, odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia ejus deminuta et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, sum- 5
mam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire; imperio populi Romani non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea, quam habeat, gratia desperare. Reperiebat etiam 6
in quaerendo Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium ejus fugae factum a Dumnorige atque ejus equitibus (nam equitatui, quem auxilio Caesari Aedui miserant, Dumnorix praeerat): eorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum perterritum

19. Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad has suspiciones certissimae res accederent, quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios traduxisset, quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset, quod ea omnia non modo injussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset, quod a magistratu Aeduorum accusaretur, satis esse causae arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut
2 civitatem animadvertere juberet. His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam, ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet,
3 verebatur. Itaque prius, quam quicquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet et cotidianis interpretibus remotis per C. Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur: simul commonefacit, quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae separatim
4 quisque de eo apud se dixerit. Petit atque hortatur, ut sine ejus offensione animi vel ipse de eo causa cognita statuat, vel civitatem statuere jubeat.

At Divitiacus' intercession Caesar contents himself with warning Dumnorix, and putting him under surveillance.

20. Divitiacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus obsecrare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem
2 statueret: Scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam
3 gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur. Sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi com-
4 moveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se aver-

terentur. Haec cum pluribus verbis flens a Caesare 5
peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prendit; consolatus rogat,
finem orandi faciat; tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse
ostendit, uti et rei publicae injuriam et suum dolorem
ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet. Dumnorigem 6
ad se vocat, fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat,
ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitas queratur,
proponit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet; praeterita se Divitiaco fratri condonare
dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit.

Caesar's plan for attacking the Helvetii in front and rear is frustrated by the false intelligence brought him by Considius.

21. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes
sub monte consedisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris
octo, qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu
ascensus, qui cognoscerent, misit. Renuntiatum est
facilem esse. De tertia vigilia Titum Labienum, 2
legatum pro praetore, cum duabus legionibus et iis
ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum montis
ascendere jubet; quid sui consilii sit, ostendit. Ipse 3
de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad
eos contendit equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. P. 4
Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur et in
exercitu L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum
exploratoribus praemittitur.

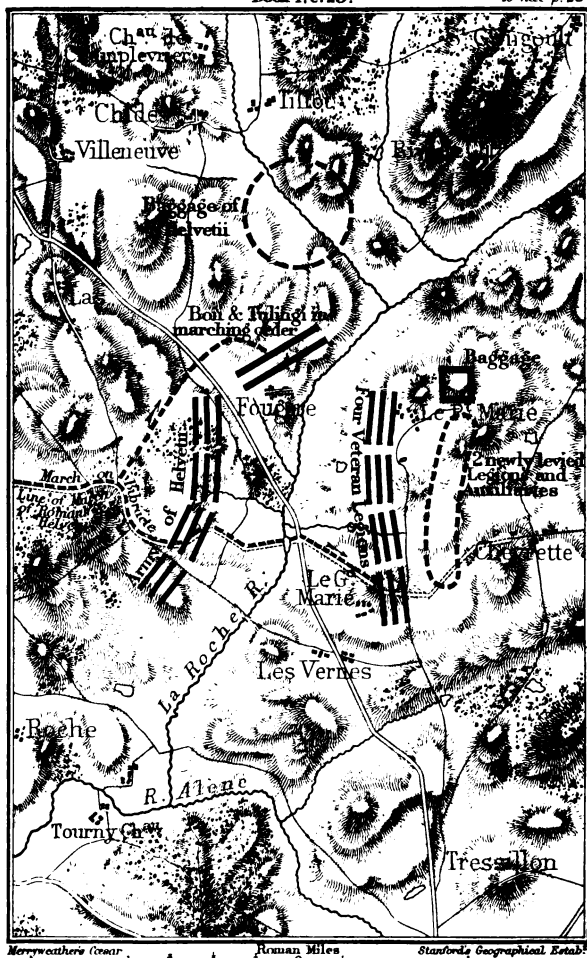
22. Prima luce, cum summus mons a Labieno
teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et
quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus
esset, Considius equo admisso ad eum accurrit, dicit
montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus
teneri: id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, 2
aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum a 3
Caesare, ne proelium committeret, nisi ipsius copiae
prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique uno

tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros
4 exspectabat proelioque abstinebat. Multo denique
die per exploratores Caesar cognovit et montem a suis
teneri et Helvetios castra movisse et Considium timore
perterritum, quod non vidisset, pro viso sibi renuntiasse.
5 Eo die quo consuerat intervallo hostes sequitur et
milia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

Caesar quits the pursuit and marches to secure the town of Bibracte, whither he is followed by the Helvetii.

23. Postridie ejus diei, quod omnino biduum supererat, cum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod
a Bibracte, oppido Aeduorum longe maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat,
rei frumentariae prospiciendum existimavit: iter ab
2 Helvetiis avertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea res
per fugitivos L. Aemilii, decurionis equitum Gallorum,
3 hostibus nuntiatur. Helvetii, seu quod timore perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimarent, eo magis,
quod pridie superioribus locis occupatis proelium non
commisissent, sive eo, quod re frumentaria intercludi
posse confiderent, commutato consilio atque itinere converso nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere
coeperunt.

Battle near Bibracte. The Helvetii are defeated, and retreat to the country of the Lingones. Caesar pursues them.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas
Caesar in proximum collem subducit equitatumque, qui
2 sustineret hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in
colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor
veteranarum, [ita uti supra]; sed in summo jugo duas
legiones, quas in Gallia citeriore proxime conscripserat,
et omnia auxilia collocari ac totum montem hominibus
compleri et interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri et
eum ab his, qui in superiore acie constiterant, muniri
3 jussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris secuti impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt; ipsi confertissima

acie rejecto nostro equitatu phalange facta sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

25. Caesar primum suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remotis equis, ut aequato omnium periculo spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suos proelium commisit. Milites e loco superiore pilis missis facile hostium 2 phalangem perfregerunt. Ea disjecta gladiis destrictis in eos impetum fecerunt. Gallis magno ad pugnam 3 erat impedimento, quod pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, cum ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere neque sinistra impedita satis commode pugnare poterant, multi ut diu jactato brachio praeoptarent scutum manu emittere et nudo corpore pugnare. Tandem vulneribus defessi et pedem referre et, quod 4 mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eo se recipere coeperunt. Capto monte et succedentibus nostris Boii 5 et Tulingi, qui hominum milibus circiter XV agmen hostium claudebant et novissimis praesidio erant, ex itinere nostros latere aperto aggressi circumvenire et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instare et proelium redintegrare coeperunt. Romani conversa signa bipartito intulerunt: prima et 6 secunda acies, ut victis ac submotis resisteret, tertia, ut venientes sustineret.

26. Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non 2 possent, alteri se, ut coeperant, in montem receperunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc toto proelio, cum ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Ad 3 multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros objecerant et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela conjiciebant, et nonnulli inter carros rotasque mataras ac tragulas subjiciebant, nostrosque vulnerabant. Diu cum esset 4 pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex 5 eo proelio circiter milia hominum CXXX superfuerunt

eaque tota nocte continenter ierunt: nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso in fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepulturam occisorum nostri triduum morati eos sequi 6 non potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litteras nuntiosque misit, ne eos frumento neve alia re juvarent: qui si juvissent, se eodem loco, quo Helvetios, habiturum. Ipse triduo intermisso cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.

The Helvetii sue for peace, deliver up their arms and give hostages, and are sent back to their own country.

27. Helvetii omnium rerum inopia adducti legatos 2 de deditione ad eum miserunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convenissent seque ad pedes projecissent suppliciterque locuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco, quo tum essent, suum adventum exspectare 3 jussisset, paruerunt. Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, poposcit. 4 Dum ea conquiruntur et conferuntur nocte intermissa, circiter hominum milia VI ejus pagi, qui Verbigenus appellatur, sive timore perterriti, ne armis traditis supplicio afficerentur, sive spe salutis inducti, quod in tanta multitudine dediticiorum suam fugam aut occultari aut omnino ignorari posse existimarent, prima nocte e castris Helvetiorum egressi ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contenderunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quorum per fines ierant, his, uti conquirerent et reducerent, si sibi purgati esse vellent, imperavit: reductos in hostium numero habuit; 2 reliquos omnes obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis in 3 deditionem accepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latovicos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti jussit et, quod omnibus frugibus amissis domi nihil erat, quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit, ut iis frumenti copiam facerent; ipsos oppida vicosque, quos incende- 4 rant, restituere jussit. Id ea maxime ratione fecit, quod noluit eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant,

vacare, ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transirent et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boios petentibus Aeduis, quod egregia 5 virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem juris libertatisque condicionem, atque ipsi erant, receperunt.

Details of the numbers of the Helvetii on entering and on quitting Gaul.

29. In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum, qui arma ferre possent, et item separatim pueri, senes mulieresque. Quarum omnium 2 rerum summa erat capitum Helvetiorum milia CCLXIII, Tulingorum milia XXXVI, Latovicorum XIIII, Rauricorum XXIII, Boiorum XXXII; ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad milia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium fuerunt ad 3 milia CCCLXVIII. Eorum, qui domum redierunt, censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus milium C et X.

Campaign against Ariovistus. B.C. 58.

The Celtic states send congratulations to Caesar, and ask leave to hold a general council to discuss certain matters touching their common interests.

30. Bello Helvetiorum confecto totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt: Intellegere sese, tametsi pro veteribus 2 Helvetiorum injuriis populi Romani ab his poenas bello repetisset, tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse, propterea quod 3 eo consilio florentissimis rebus domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque potirentur locumque domicilio ex magna copia deligerent,

quem ex omni Gallia opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum judicassent, reliquasque civitates stipendiarias 4 haberent. Petierunt, ut sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntate facere liceret: sese habere quasdam res, quas ex communi 5 consensu ab eo petere vellent. Ea re permissa diem concilio constituerunt et jurejurando, ne quis enuntiaret, nisi quibus communi consilio mandatum esset, inter se sanxerunt.

Divitiacus, on behalf of the council, gives Caesar the history of the entrance of the Germans under Ariovistus into Gaul, and of the tyranny they had exercised, and asks Caesar for aid.

31. Eo concilio dimisso idem principes civitatum, qui ante fuerant, ad Caesarem reverterunt petieruntque, uti sibi secreto de sua omniumque salute cum eo agere 2 liceret. Ea re impetrata sese omnes flentes Caesari ad pedes projecerunt: Non minus se id contendere et laborare, ne ea, quae dixissent, enuntiarentur, quam uti ea, quae vellent, impetrarent, propterea quod, si enuntiatum esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos viderent. 3 Locutus est pro his Divitiacus Aeduus: Galliae totius factiones esse duas: harum alterius principatum tenere 4 Aeduos, alterius Arvernos. Hi cum tantopere de potentatu inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse uti ab Arvernis Sequanisque Germani mercede 5 arcesserentur. Horum primo circiter milia xv Rhenum transisse: posteaquam agros et cultum et copias Gallorum homines feri ac barbari adamassent, traductos plures: nunc esse in Gallia ad centum et xx milium 6 numerum. Cum his Aeduos eorumque clientes semel atque iterum armis contendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsos accepisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, 7 omnem equitatum amisisse. Quibus proeliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et sua virtute et populi Romani hospitio atque amicitia plurimum ante in Gallia potuissent, coactos esse Sequanis obsides dare nobilissimos civitatis et jurejurando civitatem obstringere, sese neque

obsides repetituros neque auxilium a populo Romano imploraturos neque recusaturos, quo minus perpetuo sub illorum dicione atque imperio essent. Unum se esse ex 8 omni civitate Aeduorum, qui adduci non potuerit, ut juraret aut liberos suos obsides daret. Ob eam rem se 9 ex civitate profugisse et Romam ad senatum venisse auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque jurejurando neque obsidibus teneretur. Sed pejus victoribus Sequanis 10 quam Aeduis victis accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedisset tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupavisset et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequanos decedere juberet, propterea quod paucis mensibus ante Harudum milia hominum XXIV ad eum venissent, quibus locus ac sedes pararentur. Futurum esse paucis annis, 11 uti omnes ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnes Germani Rhenum transirent; neque enim conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum agro, neque hanc consuetudinem victus cum illa comparandam. Ariovistum 12 autem, ut semel Gallorum copias proelio vicerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, superbe et crudeliter imperare, obsides nobilissimi cujusque liberos poscere et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad voluntatem ejus facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium; non 13 posse ejus imperia diutius sustinere. Nisi si quid in 14 Caesare populoque Romano sit auxilii, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, quod Helvetii fecerint, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remotas a Germanis, petant fortunamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si enuntiata Ariovisto sint, non 15 dubitare, quin de omnibus obsidibus, qui apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sumat. Caesarem vel 16 auctoritate sua atque exercitus vel recenti victoria vel nomine populi Romani deterrere posse, ne major multitudo Germanorum Rhenum traducatur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti injuria posse defendere.

32. Hac oratione ab Divitiaco habita omnes, qui

aderant, magno fletu auxilium a Caesare petere coe-
2 perunt. Animadvertit Caesar unos ex omnibus Sequanos nihil earum rerum facere, quas ceteri facerent, sed tristes capite demisso terram intueri. Ejus rei quae causa esset,
3 miratus ex ipsis quaesiit. Nihil Sequani respondere, sed in eadem tristitia taciti permanere. Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere
4 posset, idem Divitiacus Aeduus respondit: Hoc esse miseriorem et graviorem fortunam Sequanorum quam reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri neque auxilium implorare auderent absentisque Ariovisti
5 crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrerent, propterea, quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur, Sequanis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestate ejus essent, omnes cruciatus essent perferendi.

Caesar promises to interfere. His motives are (1) *a desire to relieve the allies of Rome from foreign oppression;* (2) *a sense of the expediency of checking the influx of Germans into Gaul, which threatens the safety of the Province and Italy;* (3) *impatience of the arrogant behaviour of Ariovistus.*

33. His rebus cognitis Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem curae futuram: magnam se habere spem, et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem injuriis facturum.
2 Hac oratione habita concilium dimisit. Et secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur, quare sibi eam rem cogitandam et suscipiendam putaret, imprimis quod Aeduos fratres consanguineosque saepenumero a senatu appellatos in servitute atque in dicione videbat Germanorum teneri eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intellegebat; quod in tanto imperio populi Romani turpissimum sibi et rei publicae esse ar-
3 bitrabatur. Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire populo Romano periculosum videbat;
4 neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros temperaturos existi-

mabat, quin, cum omnem Galliam occupavissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fecissent, in provinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sequanos a provincia nostra Rhodanus divideret; quibus rebus quam maturrime occurrendum putabat. Ipse 5 autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam sumpserat, ut ferendus non videretur.

Ariovistus refusing in insolent terms Caesar's request for a conference, Caesar requires him to bring no more Germans into Gaul, and to abstain from injuring the Aedui. Ariovistus answers by a defiance.

34. Quamobrem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret, qui ab eo postularent, uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquio deligeret: velle sese de re publica et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere. Ei 2 legationi Ariovistus respondit: Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse: si quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. Praeterea se neque 3 sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere, quas Caesar possideret, neque exercitum sine magno commeatu atque molimento in unum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mirum videri, quid in sua Gallia, quam 4 bello vicisset, aut Caesari aut omnino populo Romano negotii esset.

35. His responsis ad Caesarem relatis iterum ad eum Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit: Quoniam tanto 2 suo populique Romani beneficio affectus, cum in consulatu suo rex atque amicus a senatu appellatus esset, hanc sibi populoque Romano gratiam referret, ut in colloquium venire invitatus gravaretur neque de communi re dicendum sibi et cognoscendum putaret, haec esse, quae ab eo postularet: primum ne quam multi- 3 tudinem hominum amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam traduceret; deinde obsides, quos haberet ab Aeduis, redderet Sequanisque permitteret, ut, quos illi haberent, voluntate ejus reddere illis liceret; neve Aeduos injuria lacesseret, neve his sociisque eorum bellum inferret.

4 Si id ita fecisset, sibi populoque Romano perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam cum eo futuram: si non impetraret, sese, quoniam M. Messala, M. Pisone consulibus senatus censuisset, uti, quicumque Galliam provinciam obtineret, quod commodo rei publicae facere posset, Aeduos ceterosque amicos populi Romani defenderet, se Aeduorum injurias non neglecturum.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Jus esse belli, ut, qui vicissent, iis, quos vicissent, quemadmodum vellent, imperarent: item populum Romanum victis non ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperare 2 consuesse. Si ipse populo Romano non praescriberet, quemadmodum suo jure uteretur, non oportere sese a 3 populo Romano in suo jure impediri. Aeduos sibi, quoniam belli fortunam temptassent et armis congressi 4 ac superati essent, stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Caesarem injuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia 5 sibi deteriora faceret. Aeduis se obsides redditurum non esse, neque iis neque eorum sociis injuria bellum illaturum, si in eo manerent, quod convenisset, stipendiumque quotannis penderent; si id non fecissent, longe iis fraternum nomen populi Romani afuturum. 6 Quod sibi Caesar denuntiaret, se Aeduorum injurias non neglecturum, neminem secum sine sua pernicie con-7 tendisse. Cum vellet, congrederetur: intellecturum, quid invicti Germani, exercitatissimi in armis, qui inter annos XIV tectum non subissent, virtute possent.

Caesar is alarmed by news that fresh hordes of Germans are on their way to Gaul, and determines to attack Ariovistus before they join him. He occupies Vesontio, on which Ariovistus is marching.

37. Haec eodem tempore Caesari mandata referebantur, et legati ab Aeduis et a Treveris veniebant: 2 Aedui questum, quod Harudes, qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur: sese ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimere 3 potuisse; Treveri autem, pagos centum Sueborum ad

ripas Rheni consedisse, qui Rhenum transire conarentur; his praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium fratres. Quibus 4 rebus Caesar vehementer commotus maturandum sibi existimavit, ne, si nova manus Sueborum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese conjunxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque re frumentaria quam celerrime potuit 5 comparata magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cum tridui viam processisset, nuntiatum est ei, Ariovistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum, contendere, triduique viam a suis finibus profecisse. Id 2 ne accideret, magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimabat. Namque omnium rerum, quae ad bellum usui 3 erant, summa erat in eo oppido facultas, idque natura loci sic muniebatur, ut magnam ad ducendum bellum 4 daret facultatem, propterea quod flumen Dubis ut circino circumductum paene totum oppidum cingit; reliquum 5 spatium, quod est non amplius pedum mille sexcentorum, qua flumen intermittit, mons continet magna altitudine, ita, ut radices montis ex utraque parte ripae fluminis contingant. Hunc murus circumdatus arcem efficit et 6 cum oppido conjungit. Huc Caesar magnis nocturnis 7 diurnisque itineribus contendit occupatoque oppido ibi praesidium collocat.

Panic and threatened mutiny in the Roman army.

39. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeatusque causa moratur, ex percontatione nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanos, incredibili virtute atque exercitatione in armis esse praedicabant (saepenumero sese cum his congressos ne vultum quidem atque aciem oculorum dicebant ferre potuisse), tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit, ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animosque perturbaret. Hic 2 primum ortus est a tribunis militum, praefectis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causa Caesarem secuti non magnum in re militari usum habebant: quorum 3

alius alia causa illata, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petebat, ut ejus voluntate discedere liceret; nonnulli pudore adducti, ut timoris
4 suspicionem vitarent, remanebant. Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimas tenere poterant: abditi in tabernaculis aut suum fatum querebantur, aut cum familiaribus suis commune periculum miserabantur.
5 Volgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ii, qui magnum in castris usum habebant, milites centurionesque quique equitatui
6 praeerant, perturbabantur. Qui se ex his minus timidos existimari volebant, non se hostem vereri, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum, quae intercederent inter ipsos atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentariam, ut satis commode supportari posset, timere dicebant.
7 Nonnulli etiam Caesari nuntiarant, cum castra moveri ac signa ferri jussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites neque propter timorem signa laturos.

Caesar calls a military council, rebukes the cowardice of his soldiers, and declares his intention of marching the next night with the tenth legion only, if the rest desert him.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocato consilio omniumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis centu-
2 rionibus vehementer eos incusavit: primum quod aut quam in partem aut quo consilio ducerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent. Ariovistum se consule cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetisse:
3 cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum judicaret? Sibi quidem persuaderi, cognitis suis postulatis atque aequitate condicionum perspecta eum neque suam neque populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum.
4 Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur? aut cur de sua virtute aut de
5 ipsius diligentia desperarent? Factum ejus hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, cum Cimbris et Teutonis a Gaio Mario pulsis non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritus videbatur; factum

etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina, quae a nobis accepissent, sublevarent. Ex quo judicari posse quantum haberet in se boni 6 constantia, propterea quod, quos aliquamdiu inermos sine causa timuissent, hos postea armatos ac victores superassent. Denique hos esse eosdem, quibuscum 7 saepenumero Helvetii congressi non solum in suis, sed etiam in illorum finibus plerumque superarint, qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitui non potuerint. Si quos 8 adversum proelium et fuga Gallorum commoveret, hos, si quaererent, reperire posse diuturnitate belli defatigatis Gallis Ariovistum, cum multos menses castris se ac paludibus tenuisset neque sui potestatem fecisset, desperantes jam de pugna et dispersos subito adortum magis ratione et consilio quam virtute vicisse. Cui rationi 9 contra homines barbaros atque imperitos locus fuisset, hac ne ipsum quidem sperare nostros exercitus capi posse. Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simula- 10 tionem angustiasque itineris conferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut de officio imperatoris desperare aut praescribere viderentur. Haec sibi esse curae: fru- 11 mentum Sequanos, Leucos, Lingones subministrare, jamque esse in agris frumenta matura; de itinere ipsos brevi tempore judicaturos. Quod non fore dicto 12 audientes neque signa laturi dicantur, nihil se ea re commoveri: scire enim, quibuscumque exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, aut male re gesta fortunam defuisse aut aliquo facinore comperto avaritiam esse convictam: suam innocentiam perpetua vita, felicitatem Helvetiorum 13 bello esse perspectam. Itaque se, quod in longiorem 14 diem collaturus fuisset, repraesentaturum et proxima nocte de quarta vigilia castra moturum, ut quam primum intellegere posset, utrum apud eos pudor atque officium, an timor valeret. Quod si praeterea nemo sequatur, 15 tamen se cum sola decima legione iturum, de qua non dubitaret, sibique eam praetoriam cohortem futuram. Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem confidebat maxime.

Discipline being restored, the march towards Ariovistus is resumed.

41. Hac oratione habita mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentes, summaque alacritas et cupiditas
2 belli gerendi innata est, princepsque decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit, quod de se optimum judicium fecisset, seque esse ad bellum gerendum para-
3 tissimam confirmavit. Deinde reliquae legiones cum tribunis militum et primorum ordinum centurionibus egerunt, uti Caesari satisfacerent: se nec umquam dubitasse neque timuisse neque de summa belli suum judicium,
4 sed imperatoris esse existimavisse. Eorum satisfactione accepta et itinere exquisito per Divitiacum, quod ex aliis ei maximam fidem habebat, ut milium amplius quinquaginta circuitu locis apertis exercitum duceret, de quarta vigi-
5 lia, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimo die, cum iter non intermitteret, ab exploratoribus certior factus est, Ariovisti copias a nostris milibus passuum quattuor et xx abesse.

Ariovistus asks for a conference, at which Caesar repeats his demands. Ariovistus replies that he has the right of priority in Gaul, and requires Caesar to withdraw.

42. Cognito Caesaris adventu Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit: quod antea de colloquio postulasset, id per se fieri licere, quoniam propius accessisset, seque id sine
2 periculo facere posse existimare. Non respuit condicionem Caesar jamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cum id, quod antea petenti denegasset,
3 ultro polliceretur, magnamque in spem veniebat, pro suis tantis populique Romani in eum beneficiis cognitis suis postulatis fore, uti pertinacia desisteret. Dies
4 colloquio dictus est ex eo die quintus. Interim saepe ultro citroque cum legati inter eos mitterentur, Ariovistus postulavit, ne quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar adduceret: vereri se, ne per insidias ab eo circumveniretur: uterque cum equitatu veniret; alia ratione
5 sese non esse venturum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interposita causa tolli volebat neque salutem

suam Gallorum equitatui committere audebat, commodissimum esse statuit omnibus equis Gallis equitibus detractis eo legionarios milites legionis decimae, cui quam maxime confidebat, imponere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus facto esset, haberet. Quod 6 cum fieret, non irridicule quidam ex militibus decimae legionis dixit: plus quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere: pollicitum se in cohortis praetoriae loco decimam legionem habiturum, ad equum rescribere.

43. Planicies erat magna et in ea tumulus terrenus satis grandis. Hic locus aequo fere spatio ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. Eo, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venerunt. Legionem Caesar, quam equis 2 vexerat, passibus ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equites Ariovisti pari intervallo constiterunt. Ariovistus, ex equis ut colloquerentur et praeter se 3 denos ut ad colloquium adducerent, postulavit. Ubi eo 4 ventum est, Caesar initio orationis sua senatusque in eum beneficia commemoravit, quod rex appellatus esset a senatu, quod amicus, quod munera amplissime missa; quam rem et paucis contigisse et pro magnis hominum officiis consuesse tribui docebat; illum, cum neque 5 aditum neque causam postulandi justam haberet, beneficio ac liberalitate sua ac senatus ea praemia consecutum. Docebat etiam, quam veteres quamque 6 justae causae necessitudinis ipsis cum Aeduis intercederent, quae senatusconsulta quotiens quamque honorifica 7 in eos facta essent, ut omni tempore totius Galliae principatum Aedui tenuissent, prius etiam, quam nostram amicitiam appetissent. Populi Romani hanc esse con- 8 suetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil deperdere, sed gratia, dignitate, honore auctiores velit esse: quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani attulissent, id iis eripi quis pati posset? Postulavit deinde eadem, 9 quae legatis in mandatis dederat, ne aut Aeduis aut eorum sociis bellum inferret; obsides redderet; si nullam partem Germanorum domum remittere posset, at ne quos amplius Rhenum transire pateretur.

44. Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris pauca respondit,
2 de suis virtutibus multa praedicavit: Transisse Rhenum
sese non sua sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum a Gallis;
3 non sine magna spe magnisque praemiis domum pro-
4 pinquosque reliquisse: sedes habere in Gallia ab ipsis
5 concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium
capere jure belli, quod victores victis imponere consuerint.
6 Non sese Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse;
7 omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse ac
8 contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno proe-
9 lio pulsas ac superatas esse. Si iterum experiri velint,
se iterum paratum esse decertare; si pace uti velint,
iniquum esse de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate
10 ad id tempus pependerint. Amicitiam populi Romani
sibi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento esse
11 opportere, idque se ea spe petisse. Si per populum
Romanum stipendium remittatur et dediticii subtrahan-
tur, non minus libenter sese recusaturum populi Ro-
12 mani amicitiam, quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem
Germanorum in Galliam traducat, id se sui muniendi,
13 non Galliae impugnandae causa facere: ejus rei testi-
monium esse, quod nisi rogatus non venerit, et quod
14 bellum non intulerit, sed defenderit. Se prius in
Galliam venisse quam populum Romanum. Numquam
ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Romani Galliae
15 provinciae finibus egressum. Quid sibi vellet? cur in
suas possessiones veniret? Provinciam suam hanc esse
16 Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concedi non
oporteret, si in nostros fines impetum faceret, sic item
nos esse iniquos, quod in suo jure se interpellaremus.
17 Quod fratres Aeduos appellatos diceret, non se tam
barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum, ut non
sciret, neque bello Allobrogum proximo Aeduos Romanis
auxilium tulisse neque ipsos in his contentionibus, quas
Aedui secum et cum Sequanis habuissent, auxilio po-
18 puli Romani usos esse. Debere se suspicari simulata
Caesarem amicitia, quod exercitum in Gallia habeat, sui
19 opprimendi causa habere. Qui nisi decedat atque

exercitum deducat ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amico, sed hoste habiturum. Quodsi eum interfecerit, 20 multis sese nobilibus principibusque populi Romani gratum esse facturum: id se ab ipsis per eorum nuntios 21 compertum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam ejus morte redimere posset. Quodsi disces- 22 sisset et liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradidisset, magno se illum praemio remuneraturum et quaecumque bella geri vellet, sine ullo ejus labore et periculo confecturum.

Caesar's reply is interrupted by a treacherous attack from Ariovistus's escort. The conference is broken up.

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non posset; neque suam neque populi Romani consuetudinem pati, uti optime merentes socios desereret, neque se judicare, Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam populi Romani. Bello superatos 2 esse Arvernos et Rutenos ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus populus Romanus ignovisset neque in provinciam redegisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quodsi 3 antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari oporteret, populi Romani justissimum esse in Gallia imperium; si judicium senatus observari oporteret, liberam debere esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legibus uti voluisset.

46. Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est, equites Ariovisti propius tumulum accedere et ad nostros adequitare, lapides telaque in nostros conjicere. Caesar loquendi finem facit seque ad suos recepit suis- 2 que imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes rejicerent. Nam etsi sine ullo periculo legionis delectae cum 3 equitatu proelium fore videbat, tamen committendum non putabat, ut pulsis hostibus dici posset eos ab se per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Posteaquam in 4 volgus militum elatum est, qua arrogantia in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Gallia Romanis interdixisset, impetumque in nostros ejus equites fecissent, eaque res

colloquium ut diremisset, multo major alacritas studiumque pugnandi majus exercitui injectum est.

Two days later Ariovistus requests a renewal of the conference. Caesar deputes two Gauls, Procillus and Metius, to represent him. They are seized by Ariovistus.

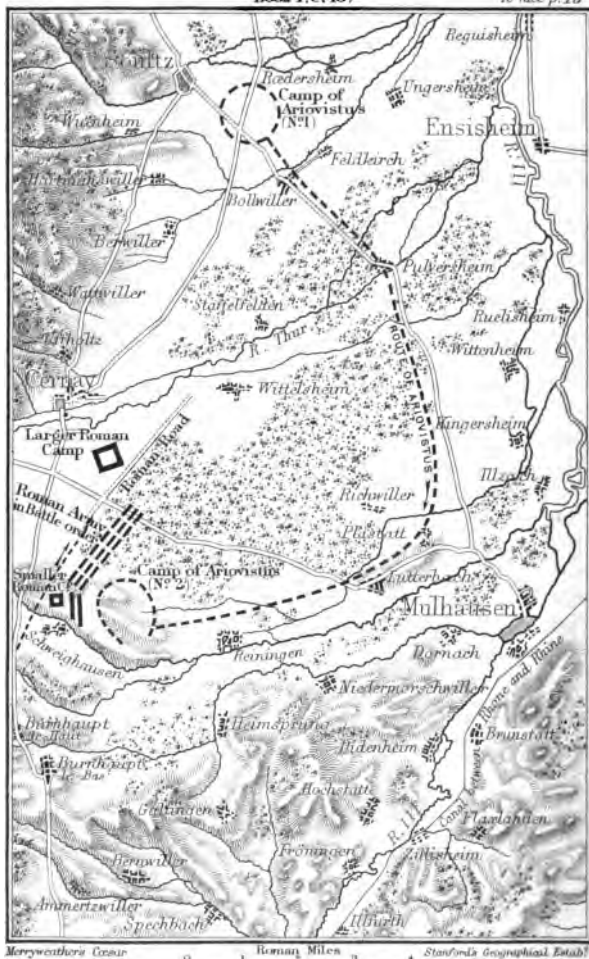
47. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit: Velle se de his rebus, quae inter eos agi coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eo: uti aut iterum colloquio diem constitueret aut, si id minus vellet, e 2 suis [legatis] aliquem ad se mitteret. Colloquendi Caesari causa visa non est, et eo magis, quod pridie ejus diei Germani retineri non potuerant, quin in 3 nostros tela conjicerent. Legatum e suis sese magno cum periculo ad eum missurum et hominibus feris 4 objecturum existimabat. Commodissimum visum est Gaium Valerium Procillum, C. Valeri Caburi filium, summa virtute et humanitate adulescentem, cujus pater a Gaio Valerio Flacco civitate donatus erat, et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, qua multa jam Ariovistus longinqua consuetudine utebatur, et quod in eo peccandi Germanis causa non esset, ad eum mittere, et M. 5 Metium, qui hospitio Ariovisti utebatur. His mandavit, ut, quae diceret Ariovistus, cognoscerent et ad 6 se referrent. Quos cum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitu suo praesente conclamavit: quid ad se venirent? an speculandi causa? Conantis dicere prohibuit et in catenas conjecit.

The armies approach each other, but the Germans refuse a pitched battle. A week is spent in cavalry skirmishes, and in the fortifying of a second camp by Caesar, to protect his communications.

48. Eodem die castra promovit et milibus passuum 2 sex a Caesaris castris sub monte consedit. Postridie ejus diei praeter castra Caesaris suas copias traduxit et milibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit eo consilio, uti frumento commeatuque, qui ex Sequanis et

PLAN OF THE FIELD OF BATTLE
WITH ARIOVISTUS
Book I, c. 48.

To face p. 45

Merryweather's Cæsar Roman Miles Stanford's Geographical Estab^t

Rivingtons : London, Oxford & Cambridge.

Aeduis supportaretur, Caesarem intercluderet. Ex eo 3 die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset. Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris con- 4 tinuit, equestri proelio cotidie contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae, quo se Germani exercuerant. Equitum 5 milia erant sex, totidem numero pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi, quos ex omni copia singuli singulos suae salutis causa delegerant: cum his in proeliis versabantur. Ad eos se equites recipiebant: hi, si quid erat durius, 6 concurrebant, si qui graviore vulnere accepto equo deciderat, circumsistebant; si quo erat longius prode- 7 undum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas, ut jubis equorum sublevati cursum adaequarent.

49. Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani consederant, circiter passus sexcentos ab iis, castris idoneum locum delegit, acieque triplici instructa ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam 2 aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire jussit. Hic 3 locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos, uti dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero sedecim milia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quae copiae nostros perterrerent et munitione prohiberent. Nihilo secius Caesar, ut ante constituerat, duas acies 4 hostem propulsare, tertiam opus perficere jussit. Munitis castris duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem 5 auxiliorum, quattuor reliquas in castra majora reduxit.

50. Proximo die instituto suo Caesar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit paulumque a majoribus castris progressus aciem instruxit, hostibus pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire 2 intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quae castra minora oppugnaret, misit. Acriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas 3

copias Ariovistus multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus
4 in castra reduxit. Cum ex captivis quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret, hanc reperiebat causam, quod apud Germanos ea consuetudo esset, ut matresfamiliae eorum sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent, utrum proelium committi ex usu esset
5 necne; eas ita dicere: non esse fas Germanos superare, si ante novam lunam proelio contendissent.

Caesar forces the Germans to fight, defeats and pursues them to the Rhine. Procillus and Metius are recovered.

51. Postridie ejus diei Caesar praesidium utrisque castris, quod satis esse visum est, reliquit, omnis alarios in conspectu hostium pro castris minoribus constituit, quod minus multitudine militum legionariorum pro hostium numero valebat, ut ad speciem alariis uteretur; ipse triplici instructa acie usque ad castra hostium
2 accessit. Tum demum necessario Germani suas copias castris eduxerunt generatimque constituerunt paribus intervallis, Harudes, Marcomanos, Triboces, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusios, Suebos, omnemque aciem suam redis et carris circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fuga
3 relinqueretur. Eo mulieres imposuerunt, quae in proelium proficiscentes passis manibus flentes implorabant, ne se in servitutem Romanis traderent.

52. Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et quaestorem praefecit, uti eos testes suae quisque
2 virtutis haberet; ipse a dextro cornu, quod eam partem minime firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium
3 commisit. Ita nostri acriter in hostes signo dato impetum fecerunt, itaque hostes repente celeriterque procurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes conjiciendi non
4 daretur. Rejectis pilis comminus gladiis pugnatum est. At Germani celeriter ex consuetudine sua phalange
5 facta impetus gladiorum exceperunt. Reperti sunt complures nostri milites, qui in phalangas insilirent et scuta manibus revellerent [et desuper vulnerarent].
6 Cum hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam

conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitudine suorum nostram aciem premebant. Id cum animadvertisset Publius Crassus adulescens, qui equitatui praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam ii, qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.

53. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes terga verterunt neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad flumen Rhenum milia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinque pervenerunt. Ibi perpauci aut viribus confisi 2 tranare contenderunt aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem reppererunt; in his fuit Ariovistus, qui naviculam 3 deligatam ad ripam nactus ea profugit; reliquos omnes equitatu consecuti nostri interfecerunt. Duae fuerunt 4 Ariovisti uxores, una Sueba natione, quam domo secum duxerat, altera Norica, regis Voccionis soror, quam in Gallia duxerat, a fratre missam: utraque in ea fuga periit. Fuerunt duae filiae: harum altera occisa, altera capta est. Gaius Valerius Procillus, cum a 5 custodibus in fuga trinis catenis vinctus traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostis equitatu persequentem incidit. Quae quidem res Caesari non minorem quam ipsa 6 victoria voluptatem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum provinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, ereptum e manibus hostium sibi restitutum videbat, neque ejus calamitate de tanta voluptate et gratulatione quicquam fortuna deminuerat. Is se praesente de se 7 ter sortibus consultum dicebat, utrum igni statim necaretur, an in aliud tempus reservaretur: sortium beneficio se esse incolumem. Item M. Metius repertus et 8 ad eum reductus est.

Caesar places his army in winter quarters amongst the Sequani, under his legate Labienus. He himself returns into Cisalpine Gaul.

54. Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato Suebi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt; quos Ubii, qui proximi Rhenum incolunt, perterritos

2 insecuti magnum ex iis numerum occiderunt. Caesar una aestate duobus maximis bellis confectis maturius paulo, quam tempus anni postulabat, in hiberna in 3 Sequanos exercitum deduxit; hibernis Labienum praeposuit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

NOTES TO BOOK I.

EXPLANATION OF REFERENCES, ETC.

The references in *square* brackets are to the sections of the "Public School Latin Primer" (ed. 1878).

N. S. refers to the Notes on Syntax, and N. E. to the Notes on Etymology, which are appended to the "Latin Primer."

References to passages in the "De Bello Gallico" are indicated by Roman figures for the books and Arabic figures for the chapters and sections.

In the references to the Latin Grammars of Roby and Madvig the numbers are those of the sections in which the rules quoted are there placed.

For Note on Reported Speech, see p. 198.

For Note on *Se* and *Suus*, see p. 201.

For Note on Caesar's Army, see p. 203.

For Geographical Index, see p. 211.

For Biographical Index, see p. 224.

I.

1. **Unam—aliam—tertiam.** "One—another—a third;" *not* "one—a second—a third," which would be *unam—alteram,* etc. Cp. **2,** 2.

ipsorum lingua. For *sua ipsorum.* The oblique cases of *ipse* are often used for *suum ipsius, sibi ipsi,* etc.; the adjective *ipse* in these cases (as always in classical Latin) emphasizing the word to which it is attached. The emphasis here is due to the antithesis between *sua lingua* and *nostra,* which would be expressed in Greek by *μὲν* and *δὲ*. Cp. **13,** 4, etc.

nostra. Although Caesar's history is written in the third person, yet he constantly uses *nos, noster* for *Romani, Romanorum; nostra lingua=Latina lingua.* See note on *Reported Speech,* IV. *note.*

2. **lingua.** [§ 116.]

dividit. [N. S. I. 3, *a.* p. 133.]

3. **cultu atque humanitate.** *Cultus* indicates the outward characteristics of civilisation (dress, habits of life, etc.); *humanitas,* the moral characteristics (refinement of thought and feeling, education, etc.).

provinciae. A word of doubtful etymology (perhaps from

providentia), and used originally of a department of the public service intrusted to the oversight of an official. Thus the phrase *urbana provincia* is used in Livy (XXXI. 6); but the later and common sense of the word is "territory outside Italy subject to Rome." When used without further definition, *provincia*, as here, means the *Provincia Narbonensis*. See *Geogr. Index*. This name still survives in *Provence*.

mercatores. "Traders," who in this case would come chiefly from the great Greek mercantile town Massilia (Marseilles).

proximi. *Propior* and *proximus* are constructed (1) with dative, as here: (2) with accusative; *propius tumulum*, **46**, 1; *proximus mare Oceanum*, III. **7**, 2: (3) with *a* or *ab*; *proximus ab aliquo*, meaning "next *after* some one."

Germanis. "*Those* Germans who live beyond the Rhine."

incolunt. Here, as often, intransitive. Cp. **5**, 3; **54**, 1.

finibus. [§ 123.]

4. **Eorum.** *I.e.* of the three peoples mentioned in section 1 as occupying Gaul. Notice also the two senses of the word *Gallia*: (1) as the name of the whole country in section 1; (2) as the name of the territory of the Galli (*Celtae*) in section 5.

Oceano. *Oceanus*, or *Mare Oceanum* (III. **7**, 2), is the Latin name for the Atlantic generally; the reference here is to that part of the Atlantic now called the Bay of Biscay.

ab Sequanis. "On the side of the Sequani." Cp. *a tergo*, *a fronte*, *a novissimo agmine*, **23**, 3.

vergit. Lit. "it slopes;" probably referring to the general inclination of the country in regard to its watershed and the course of its rivers. Cp. *spectant* in section 5: "have a (northern) aspect."

septentriones. The etymology of this word is not certain. The Romans thought it was derived from *septem-triones*, the seven ploughing-oxen, *trio* being an Old Latin vulgar word with that sense. Professor M. Müller thinks that this derivation is probably a false analogy, and that *trio* is rather connected with the root of *stella* = *sterula*, Greek ἀ-στήρ, Germ. *stern*, Eng. *star*, the initial *s* having been lost, so that *trio* = *strio* means "a star;" and *septentriones*, the seven stars of Ursa Major or Charles's Wain. The use of the singular *septentrio* arose when the distinct meaning of the two parts of the word had been melted together into one notion, "the North."

5. **inferiorem partem fl. Rh.** The lower part of the river, *i.e.* towards its mouth.

6. **eam partem Oceani.** The S.E. angle of the Bay of Biscay, called by the Romans the *sinus Cantabricus.*

2.

1. **M. Messala et M. Pisone cons.** B.C. 61. In phrases like this the conjunction is more commonly dropped (*asyndeton*). Cp. 6, 3; 35, 4.

regni cupiditate. [§ 132.]

esse. Infinitive of principal clause in *oratio obliqua;* dependent on "he said," understood from *persuasit.*

cum—praestarent. [§ 151.]

omnibus. Dative [§ 106, *a*].

imperio potiri. [§ 119, *a.*]

2. **hoc facilius.** *Hoc* is ablative of measure [N. S. V. *E.* p. 137].

flumine Rheno—qui. The relative agrees with the masculine noun *Rhenus,* not with *flumine;* so below, *flumine Rhodano, qui.* But in 12, 1, *flumen Arar, quod.* So II. 5, 4; II. 18, 1.

3. **qua ex parte.** "In which respect;" lit. "from which side." Cp. *omni ex parte,* "in all respects."

bellandi cupidi. [§ 132.]

4. **Pro.** "In proportion to." This meaning of *pro* comes from its other sense of "in the place of;" so, "in return or requital for."

multitudine hominum. See 29, 2.

milia passuum. [§ 34, p. 19.] The Roman unit in measuring distance was the *pace* (*passus*) of five Roman feet, from the point where the foot is taken up to that where the same foot is put down. The Roman mile measured 4850 *English* feet, or ·919 English mile. For the use of the accusative, see on 8, 1.

milia passuum ccxl. Notice that Caesar generally places the cardinal numbers *after milia,* not, as usual elsewhere, before it. See the rule [N. E. IV. *A. e.* (4), p. 129].

patebant. Indicative, because it expresses a matter of fact. If it had been intended to give part of their thought (*arbitrabantur*), *i.e.* the reason why their territory seemed to be too narrow, *paterent* would have been used, as subordinate to *oratio obliqua* [§ 151], and as *pertinerent* is used below, 3. 1

3.

1. **jumentorum.** From the root JUG, whence *jugum*, "a yoke;" applied to animals trained to bear the yoke, draught-horses, or oxen.

carrorum. Two-wheeled carts, which, with the *redae* (**51**, 2) of four wheels, were used by the Helvetii and Germans to carry the baggage of their armies, and their wives and children.

quam maximum numerum. An elliptical phrase for the fuller *tam magnum, quam maximum.*

coëmere. "Buy up;" the *co(n)* strengthens the force of the simple verb. "To buy from all quarters."

sementes (nom. sing. *sementis*). From *sero*, to sow. *Sĕro* is for *sĕso* (see on **46**, 4), and *sĕmentis* for *sĕsmentis.*

Notice the *asyndeton* between the infinitives *comparare—coëmere—facere—confirmare.*

2. **in tertium annum.** "*For* the third year following." The preposition *in* is constantly used with the accusative, where no actual motion is implied, to express the *limit* of time or space *to which* you measure. Cp. **2**, 4, *in longitudinem, in latitudinem.*

4. **regnum.** There was no monarchy in the usual sense of the word amongst the Gauls; *regnum* here means the despotic ascendancy which powerful chiefs often attained over their tribe.

multos annos. [§ 102.]

obtinuerat. "Had held." This is the proper meaning of *obtinere*, though it is not unfrequently used in the sense of its English derivative "obtain," as below, in section 5 and in **18**, 5.

a senatu pop. Rom. amicus appellatus erat. The titles of "friend" and "king" were honorary distinctions granted by the Roman senate to foreign princes in reward for services, or to flatter and conciliate a dangerous rival, *e.g.* Ariovistus (**35**, 2).

principatum. Distinct from *regnum*, and implying the influential position in his tribe of a man of high birth, wealth, and military distinction. "Who at that time held a leading position in his state."

plebi acceptus. [§ 106, (3).] *Acceptus* is here an adjective, not a participle. Cp. *exercitatus*, **36**, 7; *confertus*, **24**, 3.

5. **factu.** [§ 141, 6.]

propterea quod—esset. "Because (he said) he was." See on *patebant*, **2**, 4.

non esse dubium, quin. [App. II. (*C*), V. 2, (2), p. 167.]

totius Galliae. [N. S. VI. *C.* 3, p. 139.]

copiis. "Resources." Cp. 31, 5; II. 10, 4.

conciliaturum. "Procure."

confirmat. "Affirms."

6. **jusjurandum.** Lit. "the swearing one's rights;" hence of taking any oath.

per tres—populos. *Per* with an accusative is regularly used instead of the ablative of the instrument, when the instrument is a person or persons. Cp. *per indicium*=*per indices*, 4, 1, etc.

totius Galliae potiri. *Potior*, more generally constructed with the ablative (of means or instrument), as in 2, 1, sometimes takes the genitive according to [§ 133].

sese—posse sperant. Verbs of hoping, promising, etc., are regularly followed by the future infinitive, except in the case of *posse*, where the meaning of the word contains a reference to the future.

4.

1. **per indicium.** "By informers" (*indices*). Cp. use of *servitia* for *servi;* and see above, 3, 6.

enuntiata. See on 17, 3.

Moribus suis. [§ 114.] See on *ejus voluntate*, 7, 3.

ex vinclis causam dicere. "To plead, make his defence, *in* chains." Cp. *pugnare ex equo*, "to fight *on* horseback."

damnatum. Object of *sequi*, of which *poenam* is the subject; and the whole infinitive clause is subject of the impersonal verb *oportebat.* See [N. S. IX. *F. b.* (2), p. 145.] "The punishment which would necessarily follow his condemnation was that," etc.

ut—cremaretur. Explaining *poenam.* See on 5, 1.

igni. The usual ablative of *ignis.* Cp. 53, 7.

2. **Die constituta.** [§ 120.]

causae dictionis. Notice the not common idiom of a double genitive. *Causae* is the objective genitive after *dictionis* [§ 132]; *dictionis* is the ordinary attributive genitive after *die.* *Dies causae dicendae* (dative of purpose) would have been a more usual expression.

familiam. "Slaves."

ad—milia decem. *Ad* with numbers, like Greek *εἰς*, has the sense of "about" or "to the number of." Cp. **5**, 2; **29**, 2.

clientes obaeratosque. The Gallic nobles had large numbers of dependants, who, originally freemen, had, through inability to pay their debts, or by acts of oppression on the part of the nobles, been deprived of their independence (see VI. **13**, 2), so that the *obaerati* were one kind of *clientes.* The word *cliens* comes from the old verb *cluo* (Gr. *κλύω*), to hear, or obey; it is used of the dependants of a state in **31**, 6.

eripuit se ne, etc. *I.e.* by intimidating his judges. The *ne*, as always, is a final particle, and expresses Orgetorix' purpose. [§ 152, I. (2).]

3. **Cum—conaretur.** [§ 153 (1).]

neque abest suspicio quin. [App. II. (*C*), V. 2, (2), p. 167.]

mortem sibi consciverit. "Committed suicide."

5.

1. **ut e finibus suis exeant.** A subjunctive after *ut*, as here, or an infinitive, as in **7**, 1, is often added to explain more clearly the reference of a preceding clause. Cp. **4**, 1, *ut cremaretur;* III. **22**, 2, etc.

2. **oppida.** Walled towns, in distinction from *vicos*, unfortified villages (the same word as the Greek *οἶκος* for *Ϝοικος*); whilst *privata aedificia* means the homesteads not included in either the *oppida* or *vici*. Cp. II. **7**, 3.

ad duodecim. See on **4**, 2.

domum reditionis. *Domum* is the accusative of motion to a place [§ 101] after the verbal substantive in *-io*, used as equivalent to a gerund here, and not uncommonly in Plautus and Terence. Cicero has *domum itionem* (*de Div.* I. 32, 68). So *obtemperatio legibus* (*de Legg.* I. 15, 42), where the verbal substantive is constructed with the same case as the verb from which it is derived.

mensum. The usual form of the genitive plural of *mensis*, as if from a nominative singular *mens;* but *mensium* also occurs. For the use of the genitive here, see [§ 128]; it defines the kind of *cibaria* by their amount.

molĭta. Part. perfect passive, from *molo, molĕre.*

cibaria. "Soldiers' provisions;" here=*frumentum.*

domo. [§ 121, C. *a.*]

3. **oppidis suis—una cum iis.** *Suis* refers to the subject of its own verb, *proficiscantur; iis* refers to the subject of the main verb, *persuadent,* and is therefore an exception to the rule. See the note on *Se and Suus,* II. (*a*), and IV., and cp. **6**, 2; **14**, 2; **37**, 2, for similar exceptions.

6.

1. **itinera—quibus itineribus.** It is a very common practice with Caesar to repeat the antecedent with its relative. Perhaps we may trace in it the influence of the formal phraseology of law documents and state papers. Cp. section 3, *diem, qua die,* and many other instances.

possent. [§ 150.]

vix qua. *Vix* is placed first for the sake of emphasis. Cp. **25**, 3, *multi—ut praeoptarent;* and III. **4**, 1. *Qua* is an adverb.

singuli carri. The distributive numeral means here "one at a time," *i.e.* in single file.

ducerentur. [§ 150.]

prohibere. The object is understood from the context: "bar the passage."

provinciam nostram. See **1**, 1, and **1**, 3.

pacati. See *Geogr. Index, "Allobroges."*

nonnullis locis. Ablative of "place where" without a preposition. [N. S. V. *G.* 1, p. 137.]

transitur. *I.e. transiri potest;* "it is forded," and therefore "is fordable."

2. **bono animo.** [§ 115.]

viderentur. [§ 151.] The subjunctive shows that this was the reason in the mind of the Helvetii for thinking that they could persuade the Allobroges. See on **2**, 4, *patebant.*

coacturos. The object is to be supplied from *Allobrogibus* above.

per suos fines eos. See on **5**, 3, *oppidis suis—una cum iis.*

3. **conveniant.** [§ 150.]

a. d. V. Kal. Apr. [N. E. p. 131.] "The original signification of the expression *ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles* seems to have been 'before (on the fifth day) the Kalends of April,' the exact day being thrown in parentheti-

cally, and then attracted from the ablative case [§ 120] to the accusative in consequence of following *ante*," which really governs *Kalendas* (Roby, *Lat. Gr.* vol. i. p. 454).

L. Pisone, A. Gabinio. The date of their consulship was B.C. 58.

7.

1. **id—eos conari.** See on **5**, 1.

nuntiatum esset. For the mood, see [§ 153, (1)]. The tense follows the rule that when a dependent sentence in the subjunctive *precedes* a principal sentence which has a historic present, the verb of the dependent sentence is generally in a historic tense (Roby, § 1512).

Galliam ulteriorem = *Galliam transalpinam*. See *Introduction*, § 2 (2).

ad Genavam pervĕnit. "Advances *as far as* Geneva;" not *to* Geneva, which would not require the preposition. Plutarch says that this journey was accomplished in eight days.

2. **legio una.** Apparently the tenth legion. See note on *Army*, § 2.

3. **civitatis.** [N. S. VI. *C.* 3, p. 139.]

legatos cujus legationis. See **6**, 1. For the genitive, see reference on *civitatis* above.

qui dicerent. [§ 150.]

nullum. Placed last, out of its natural order, for the purpose of emphasis. "Because other route they had none."

rogare. Notice the omission of the subject (*se*), which is common in *oratio obliqua*, except with *nos* and *vos*.

ejus voluntate. [§ 113.] The ablative of manner is generally with an attribute, either an adjective or a genitive case, except in some old phrases (*e.g. jure, sponte*), and where the ablative might be loosely regarded as an ablative of the instrument (Roby, § 1236).

liceat. Notice the mixture of historic and primary sequences. The use of the primary tense here is probably to mark the reference to the *future* implied in the infinitive *rogare*, whilst in the first part of the speech (*haberent*) the reference is to present time. They said, "We have (*now*) no other route; we ask you to allow us (*presently*) to take this route." See note on *Reported Speech*, III. *note* (4). Cp. the parallel case in II. **14**, 2.

4. **memoria.** [§ 112.]

sub jugum missum. The practice is described by Livy, III. 28: "*Tribus hastis jugum fit, humi fixis duabus, superque eas transversa una deligata.*" Under the yoke or arch so made the soldiers of the conquered army were compelled to pass one by one, in token of complete submission to the victors, the yoke being the badge of slavery. The custom was Roman, but adopted by foreigners from them. Cp. the famous case at the Furculae Caudinae in the Samnite war (Livy, IX. 56).

homines inimico animo. [§ 115.]

quos imperaverat. See above on section 2. For indicative, see on **2**, 4, *patebant.*

dum convenirent. *Dum* meaning "until" takes the subjunctive, except when the verb refers to a fact in the past [§ 152, III. (1)].

diem sumpturum. "Take *time.*"

ad Idus. *Ad* with dates as with numerals, "about." See on **4**, 2. [N. E. p. 131.]

reverterentur. The *oratio obliqua* equivalent for the imperative of *oratio recta.* See note on *Reported Speech,* II. (*c*).

8.

1. **ea legione militibusque.** The ablative of the instrument [§ 112] is often used instead of the ablative of the agent with *ab* [§ 122, *b*] in speaking of bodies of troops. Cp. **15**, 3; **53**, 3; II. **10**, 3.

milia passuum. [N. S. IX. *G. c.* (2), p. 146.]

decem novem. Contrary to the usual rule of compound numbers under twenty. [N. E. IV. *A. c.* (1), p. 129.]

in altitudinem pedum sedecim. The principal forms of expression for *space measured* [N. S. IX. *G. c.* (3), p. 146] are—

(1.) Accusative [§ 102]; *e.g. fossae XV pedes latae.* Cp. **2**, 4.

(2.) Ablative [§ 118]; *latum pede est.*

(3.) Genitive [§ 128]; *fossa XIX pedum.* Cp. II. **5**, 6.

(4.) Genitive depending on an ablative, or accusative with *in,* of the abstract substantive (*altitudo, longitudo,* etc.), as in this passage. See note on **3**, 2.

murum—fossamque perducit. These words must not be taken to imply that Caesar built a stone wall and dug a fosse for the whole length of the nineteen miles from the Lake

of Geneva to Pas de l'Ecluse (see Plan in text, p. 19). Such a work could hardly have been completed in the time at his disposal, from two to three weeks; and, if possible, would have been unnecessary, since the steep cliffs, between which the Rhone flows swiftly in this part of its course, would in most places be a sufficient natural barrier. That no traces of any stone fortifications are to be found makes it almost certain that Caesar only strengthened the weak points of the line by earthworks, and the *murus* and *fossa* will then refer to the natural cliff-wall, dug out at the base, wherever it was necessary to raise its sheer height to sixteen (Roman) feet. Behind this Caesar placed, at intervals, fortified posts or redoubts (*castella*), garrisoned by his troops. (See Napoleon's *Julius Caesar*, vol. ii. pp. 57, 58.)

2. **castella.** For *casterulum*, a diminutive of *castrum*, like *puella* for *puerula* from *puer*.

se invito. [§ 125, *a*.] For use of *se*, see note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*a*).

conarentur. Imperfect subjunctive used for the future subjunctive. See note on *Reported Speech*, III. *note* (2).

possit. When a subjunctive (*possit*) dependent on a historic present (*communit*) has another subjunctive dependent on it (*conarentur*), the former is often in a primary tense (Roby, § 1514); hence the use of *possit* as compared with *conarentur*.

3. **more et exemplo populi R.** See on 7, 3, *ejus voluntate*. [§ 114.]

ulli. *Ullus* and *quisquam* are seldom used, except after negatives and comparative adjectives.

4. **spe.** [§ 123.]

alii. *I.e.* "others of the Helvetii," corresponding to an unexpressed *alii* implied before *navibus*.

interdiu. *Diu* is ablative of an old word *dius*=*dies*. Cp. *nudiustertius*=*nunc dies tertius*; *dudum*=*diudum*; *diurnus*.

conati, si possent, etc. "Made an attempt to break through, if possible." The *si-possent* does not depend on *conati*, but is part of a conditional sentence in *oratio obliqua*. Lit. "they made an attempt, (thinking that) if they could break through (they would)" (Roby, § 1754). Cp. the parallel passage in II. 9, 1.

conatu. [§ 123.]

9.

1. **una** is emphatic: "one, and only one way, that through the S., remained." The order of words is noticeable: "*per Sequanos*" separates the adjective *una* from its noun *via*, to show that the prepositional phrase qualifies the noun and not the verb (*relinquebatur*).

Sequanis invitis. [§ 125, *a.*] "Without the leave of the S."

2. **sua sponte.** Lit. "On their own responsibility," *sponte* and *spondeo* belonging to the same root. Two uses of the phrase are to be distinguished, as equivalent to (1) "voluntarily," of an action not *forced* on the actors by others; (2) "singly" of an action done without others' *help*. The latter, which is the rarer use, belongs to this passage.

eo deprecatore. "By his intercession." [§ 125, *a.*]

impetrarent. The object is to be supplied from the context.

3. **gratia.** "Popularity."

regni. [§ 132.]

novis rebus studebat. "Was eager for a revolution." *Novae res*, "a change in the state of (political) affairs." Cp. the use of *res* in the meaning of "politics" in *res capessere*, etc. So too *novae tabulae* means "a change of ledgers," *i.e.* an abolition of debts. For the dative with *studebat*, [§ 107].

suo beneficio. Ablative. "By benefits conferred by himself."

4. **dent.** The subject of *dent* is "*Sequani et Helvetii*," as is plain from the context. If any ambiguity had been possible, the change of subject between the co-ordinate verbs, *patiantur*—*dent* would have been marked, as usual.

ne-prohibeant—ut-transeant. The purpose of the exchange of hostages.

10.

1. **absunt—est.** The mood of these verbs shows that they are not part of the report (*oratio obliqua*), but explanations added by the writer of the narrative for his readers' sake.

2. **si fieret—futurum.** Conditional sentence in *oratio obliqua* depending on *intellegebat.* See note on *Reported Speech*, II. (*d*), *note* (3).

locis patentibus. "An undefended country," *i.e.* with no protection, natural or artificial, against invaders.

3. **legatum.** See note on *Army*, § 5 (*b*).

Italiam. *I.e. Gallia citerior*, S. of the Alps. See *Introduction*, § 2 (1).

magnis itineribus. "Making all speed." The phrase is regularly used of the "forced marches" of an army.

duas legiones conscribit. The senate had given Caesar four legions; the tenth (mentioned 7, 2) and probably the three at Aquileia. The other two he seems to have raised on his own authority. See note on *Army*, § 1.

conscribit. The technical term for levying troops, referring to the making up of the roll of names of the soldiers called out.

circum A. hiemabant. Winter quarters, *hiberna* (see note on *Army*, § 10) were generally not *in*, but *near* a town.

5. **Compluribus his proeliis pulsis.** The *his* refers to the tribes above mentioned, and is ablative absolute [§ 125], *pulsis* agreeing with it; *compluribus proeliis* [§ 113]. The awkward conjunction of ablatives is parallel to III. 6, 3, *copiis fusis armisque exutis.*

ulterioris provinciae. "A part of the transalpine province" (*Provincia*), as distinguished from *provincia citerior* (Gallia Cisalpina). [§ 130.]

11.

2. **cum—possent.** [§ 153 (1).] And for use of imperfect, see 7, 1, *nuntiatum esset.*

rogatum. [§ 141, 5.]

3. **Ita se, etc.** The *oratio obliqua* begins at once, without any verb of *saying* expressed to introduce it; but the verb is easily supplied from *rogatum.* "(Who said) that they had so," etc.

omni tempore. "At all times." Ablative of time *in the course of which* the action takes place; not *during*, *i.e. throughout* which, where the accusative would be required. Cp. 26, 2, *hoc toto proelio*, etc.

nostri. See note on *Reported Speech*, IV. *note*; and on 1, 1.

liberi eorum. "Their children," *i.e.* those of the Aedui. *Eorum* is here used although referring to the subject of the main verb of the *oratio obliqua*, because the dependent clause (*ut—debuerint*) in which *eorum* comes is a *consecutive* clause. See note on *Se and Suus*, II. *note.*

expugnari. "Taken by assault."

debuerint. Dependent on historic present. See note on *Reported Speech*, III. *note* (3).

4. **Aedui Ambarri.** "The Aeduan Ambarri." See *Geogr. Index*, under "Ambarri." Emendations of the text have been proposed : (1) to insert *quo* after *tempore*, "At the same time as the Aedui ;" (2) to omit *Aedui*.

depopulatis agris. Perfect participle of deponent used in passive sense. This occurs frequently with the participles of *populor*, *ulciscor*, *meditor*, and others. Cp. *dimenso opere*, II. 19, 5.

5. **vicos.** See on 5, 2.

possessiones. "Lands."

nihil reliqui. [§ 131.]

6. **pervenirent.** [§ 152, III. (1).] See on 7, 4.

12.

1. **quod.** Agreeing with *flumen*, not *Arar*. See on 2, 2.

incredibili lenitate. [§ 115.]

in utram partem fluat. [§ 149.]

transibant. Imperfect of an uncompleted action. "Were in course of crossing."

2. **per exploratores.** See on 3, 6 ; and note on *Army*, § 4.

tres copiarum partes. "Three-fourths." The rules for expressing fractions in Latin are—

(1.) If the numerator be 1, express by the ordinal of the denominator with *pars ; e.g.* $\frac{1}{3}$ = *pars tertia*, 31, 10.

(2.) If the numerator = (denominator − 1), express by the cardinal of the numerator with *partes ;* as here, $\frac{3}{4}$ = *tres partes*.

(3.) In other cases express the numerator by the cardinal, the denominator by the ordinal in the feminine plural ; *e.g. quattuor septimae* = $\frac{4}{7}$.

Helvetios is the subject of *traduxisse*.

flumen. Accusative after *traduxisse*. Verbs compounded with a preposition implying motion to or over may take an accusative of the place to which, or over which, the movement is made, without repeating the preposition. Cp. 31, 16 ; II. 4, 1 ; II. 5, 4 ; II. 10, 1. Sometimes such verbs of motion to a place take the dative. Cp. II. 10, 5.

So too verbs compounded with a preposition implying motion

from a place may take the ablative (cp. II. 11, 1), or accusative, **44**, 14.

citra flumen Ararim. *I.e.* on the east bank, up which Caesar appears to have marched, so that he must have crossed it lower down from the territory of the Segusiavi, who lived on the west bank. The place where the Helvetii crossed the Arar has been fixed by different editors at Chalons (Cabillonum), Mâcon (Matisco), and not far above Lyons (Lugdunum).

Ararim. Notice the accusative, as if from a stem *Arari-*.

de tertia vigilia. See note on *Army*, § 10. *De* in expressions of time has the sense of (1) "immediately after," *e.g. de media nocte*, II. 7, 1; or (2) "in the course of," as here. Cp. Greek genitive *νυκτός*.

3. **Eos—eorum.** An awkward repetition of the object of the participle in another case, necessitated by the introduction of a new object to the main verb *concidit*. Cp. **54**, 1, etc.

4. **pagus Tigurinus.** See *Geogr. Index*. *Pagus* was the Roman name for the local divisions of German and Celtic tribes, which the Germans themselves called "Hundreds," according to Tacitus (*Germ.* 6); perhaps as originally containing a hundred households. The word "Hundred" is still retained as the name of an English local division. The name for the district is here used of the men belonging to it. Cp. note on **37**, 3.

civitas Helvetia. Generally the name of a people is not used adjectively, but a derivative in *-cus* is formed from it; but there are many exceptions. Cp. **2**, 2, *agrum Helvetium;* II. **14**, 2, *civitas Aedua;* and *pagus Tigurinus* above.

5. **domo.** [§ 121, C. *a.*]

memoria. "Within the memory of." [§ 120.]

sub jugum miserat. See on **7**, 4.

6. **populo Romano intulerat.** [§ 106, *a.*]

7. **eodem proelio.** See below on **13**, 2, *bello Cassiano*.

13.

1. **ut—posset.** See on **7**, 1, *cum—nuntiatum esset*.

in Arare. "*On* the A." Cp. II. **5**, 6.

2. **id—ut flumen transirent.** For use of the explanatory *ut*, cp. **5**, 1.

diebus xx. "In the course of twenty days." See on 11, 3, *omni tempore.* [§ 120.]

intellegerent. See above, *posset*, section 1; and note on 7, 1.

legatos—cujus legationis. See 7, 3.

bello Cassiano. See *Historical Index*, "*Longinus, L. Cassius.*" The ablative of "time when" [§ 120], of words which do not in themselves signify time, is often used in fixing a date; *e.g.* the regular Roman year-date *M. Messala, M. Pisone consulibus*, 35, 4. Cp. *eodem proelio* above, in 12, 7; *servili tumultu*, 40, 5; *adventu exercitus*, II. 30, 1; III. 23, 4; *solis occasu*, 50, 3; *imperio pop. Rom.*, 18, 5.

egit. From *agere causam*, to carry on a plea at law, comes the absolute use of *agere* = "to plead," in a general sense.

3. **eos.** Sc. *Helvetios.* In the first part of this *oratio obliqua* Divico does not identify himself with the Helvetii, though he does later, as section 4, *ipsos* for *seipsos* (see on 1, 1), and section 5, *se*, which in *oratio recta* would be *nos.*

sin. Probably for *si-ne*, the *ne* negativing the former alternative. "If, on the contrary (*i.e.* not making peace with the H.), he should persist in the war," etc.

reminisceretur. For imperative of *oratio recta*, see note on *Reported Speech*, II. (*c*).

incommodi. [§ 133, *a.*] Divico means the disaster of L. Cassius.

4. **Quod—adortus esset.** "Whereas—he had attacked," or, "as to the attack which he had made;" *quod* being grammatically an accusative of kindred meaning after *adortus esset.*

improviso. Properly neuter ablative absolute of the participle *improvisus* = "it having been unforeseen." Cp. *secreto*, 18, 2; *inopinato*, etc.

suae—ipsos. *Suae* refers to the subject of its own verb *tribueret; ipsos* is for *seipsos*, in antithesis to *suae* (see on 1, 1), where the *se* refers to the subject of the main verb of the *oratio obliqua.* See note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*a*).

5. **constitissent.** "Taken their stand."

internicione (*inter—nex*). *Inter*, like *per*, is often used in composition to give or strengthen a meaning of *destruction; e.g. perire, interire, interimere*, etc.

memoriam proderet, etc. "Transmit a record of disaster."

14.

1. **His.** Sc. *legatis.*

eo—minus. [N. S. V. *E.* p. 137.]

memoria. [§ 112.]

ferre. Without expressed subject (*se*).

si alicujus. *Aliquis* is used for the indefinite *quis* after *si* and *ne* when the pronoun is emphatic = "any whatever" (MADVIG, *Lat. Gr.* 493, *Obs.* 1).

injuriae. [§ 133.]

fuisse. "It *was* not;" for *fuit* in *oratio recta.*

deceptum. Perfect infinitive passive (*esse* omitted). "But it had been deceived by the fact that it was neither conscious of any deed of its own which could cause it apprehension, and thought groundless apprehensions unworthy."

timendum. [§ 144.]

2. **contumeliae.** [§ 133, *a.*]

quod eo invito—quod Aeduos, etc. This repetition of a word (*quod*) in the place of conjunctions is called *anaphora.* Cp. **19,** 1; **43,** 4.

eo. Sc. *Caesare.* See **8,** 2, *si se invito transire conarentur.* For *eo* in a final clause referring irregularly to the subject of the main verb (note on *Se and Suus,* IV.), see note on **5,** 3, *una cum iis.*

Allobrogas. Greek accusative of a foreign word. Cp. *Lingonas,* **26,** 6; *Curiosolitas,* II. **34,** 1; III. **7,** 3.

posse. See note on *Reported Speech,* II. (*b*).

3. **victoria.** [§ 111.]

se—admirarentur. "As to their wonder that they had so long carried off their wrongdoings with impunity." *Se* refers to the subject of *admirarentur.*

This sense of *impune ferre* is found in Cic. *Fam.* XIII. 77: "*Cum multos libros surripuisset nec se impune laturum putaret;*" Ov. *Fasti,* IV. 595, etc.

4. **doleant—velint.** The primary tenses are used here because the statement made is a general one, and therefore true in the present as well as the past. Cp. **40,** 12, and **43,** 8. See note on *Reported Speech,* III. *note* (4).

5. **dentur, etc.** Perhaps influenced by the tenses in the preceding section. Caesar here changes from the historic to

the speaker's original tenses. See note on *Reported Speech*, III. *note* (4).

ipsis. Sc. *Aeduis*, as distinct from their *socii* the Ambarri.

satisfaciant. "Make compensation to," with dative. [§ 106, *a.*]

6. **consuerint.** In consecutive sentences (*i.e.* such as express a consequence) [§ 152, I. (1)] the present is used, even after an historical tense, of actions belonging to the present, and the perfect of actions whose results continue to the present (Engl. perfect with "have") (ROBY, §§ 1515, 1516). *Consuevi* is a perfect with a present meaning, "I am accustomed," like *novi*, etc.

populum Romanum esse testem. Cp. 7, 4.

15.

1. **ad numerum.** Cp. 4, 2.

coactum habebat. See note on II. 4, 4.

qui videant. [§ 150.]

faciant. [§ 149.]

2. **novissimum agmen.** "The rearguard," that part which appears *latest* to one watching an army march by.

alieno loco. [N. S. V. *G.* 1, p. 137.] "On unfavourable ground."

3. **sublati.** "Lifted up," "emboldened."

equitibus. See on 8, 1.

4. **in praesentia.** "At the present time;" ablative singular of substantive.

5. **dies circiter quindecim.** [§ 102 (1).] *Circiter* is here an adverb.

uti—interesset. "*In such a manner* that there *was* an interval." *Uti* expressing a consequence. [§ 152, I. 1.]

quinis aut senis milibus. Ablative of comparison [§ 124 (2)]. The distributives show that this was the interval kept during each day's march. Notice the omission of *passuum*. Cp. II. 30, 2.

16.

1. **cotidie.** A locative (or perhaps ablative) case of *quotus dies*, "as many days as there are." Cp. *postridie*, *meridie*, etc. The interchange of *qu* and *c* in spelling of Latin words is n·

uncommon. Cp. *quum* and *cum*, *coquus* and *cocus*, *qui* and its genitive *cujus*, *quatio* and its compounds *concutio*, *discutio*.

Aeduos frumentum flagitare. [§ 98.]

flagitare. Historic infinitive [§ 140, 2]. Cp. below, section 3; **32**, 3. The verb is frequentative in form, but no simple verb exists. [71, I.]

quod essent—polliciti. Subjunctive, dependent on *oratio obliqua*, containing part of Caesar's demand. [§ 151.]

publice. "As a state."

2. **septentrionibus.** See on **1**, 4.

frumenta. The plural is always used in Caesar of standing crops. Cp. **40**, 11; III. **9**, 8.

Arare. Ablative of "way by which" [§ 121].

subvexerat. "Brought up the river." *Sub*, with verbs of motion, implies motion to or from below.

3. **Diem ex die ducere.** "Put him off day after day." *Diem* is accusative of duration of time [§ 102]. *Ducere* properly to protract, put off the accomplishment of a thing (**38**, 4); hence, by an easy change of reference, to put off a person. The object is here *Caesarem* (understood). Cp. *se duci* below (section 4). "*Diem de die prospectans*" (LIVY, V. 48).

conferri. By individuals bringing their contributions to the rendezvous. *Comportari*, of the transport of the whole amount.

4. **militibus.** [§ 107.]

metiri oporteret. There is a reference here to the distribution of rations of corn and fodder (*menstruum*, derived from *mensis*, the distribution having been originally monthly). *Metiri* is probably passive here (cp. on **11**, 4), as with active infinitives after *oportet* Caesar does not omit the accusative of the object. Cp. **23**, 1.

Divitiaco et Lisco. Ablatives absolute with *convocatis*. [§ 125.]

magistratui. [§ 106, *a*.]

quem—appellant. *Vergobret* was the name of the official, not of the office. There is a confusion of the two senses of *magistratus*, "officer" and "office." But the whole sentence is carelessly written; cp. the awkward series of relative clauses *quorum—qui—quem—qui*.

vergobretum. This title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui is derived by Mommsen from the Celtic words *guerg*,

worker, and *breth*, judgment. He was elected by a council of priests (*B. G.* VII. 33) annually.

posset—sublevetur. See note on *possit*, **8**, 2; the subject of *posset* is *frumentum* (to be supplied from the former part of the sentence).

tam necessario tempore. "At so urgent a crisis (as now), when the enemy were so near." See on **24**, 3.

non sublevetur. "He is not assisted;" opposed to *sit destitutus*, "abandoned."

17.

1. **quod tacuerat.** *Silere* = "to make no noise;" *tacere* = "not to speak;" hence *tacere* is often used quasi-transitively, as = *non-dicere*. Cp. "*Quid dixit aut quid tacuit*" (Hor. *Epod.* V. 49); "*Aureus in medio Marte tacetur amor*" (Ovid, *Amores*, II. 18, 36).

privatim. "As private persons," not as holding authority from the state.

2. **principatum Galliae.** See on **3**, 4.

dubitare, quin. [App. II., IV. (*C.*) V. (2), p. 167.]

superaverint. For future perfect subjunctive, *superaturi fuerint*. See note on *Reported Speech*, III. (*b*), *note* (2).

Aeduis. Dative, *eripere* being a "contrary" of *dare*. [§ 106 (1).]

3. **nostra.** See on **1**, 1. Notice that it is here used in the speech of a Gaul.

enuntiari. "Disclosed," the ordinary word for divulging a secret. Cp. *enuntiarit* in the next sentence; **30**, 5; **31**, 2, etc.

4. **necessariam rem.** "A matter of urgent importance."

18.

1. **jactari.** "Discussed."

Quaerit, quae dixerat. "He asks (the meaning) of that which he had said." *Quae* here does not question indirectly [§ 149], but is a relative pronoun.

Dicit. Sc. *Liscus;* though the change of subject is unmarked.

2. **secreto.** "Apart from Liscus," *secreto* being perfect passive participle from *secernere*, to separate. Cp. *improviso*, **13**, 4, etc.

Ipsum esse D. "That D. was indeed the man" to whom Liscus had referred.

summa audacia. [§ 115.]

rerum novarum. See on 9, 3.

Compluris annos. [§ 102.]

portoria—vectigalia. *Vectigal*—from *veho*, perhaps meaning "that which is brought (*vehitur*) to the treasury"—was the general name for all the regular public revenues; *portoria* for one kind of *vectigal*, viz. the customs duties, paid on things exported and imported.

parvo pretio. [§ 117.]

redempta. *Redimo* is a technical word meaning "to take a contract for doing a thing;" here, to "contract for the collection of the taxes," "to farm the taxes." At Rome the taxes were regularly let out to companies (*societates*) of *publicani*, who contracted to pay a sum of money to the state, and to furnish all the machinery for collecting the taxes, and received in lieu of this the actual contributions of the taxpayers.

redempta habere. See note on II. 4, 1.

licente—liceri. *Licere*, as a personal verb, means "to be on sale;" *liceri*, "to bid at an auction sale." *Licente* here is the deponent present participle.

facultates. "Means." See note on 38, 3.

3. **numerum equitatus.** "Body of cavalry." *Numerus* in post-Augustan Latin became a technical word for any indefinitely large or small body of troops.

domi. [§ 121, B. *b*.] and [N. S. V. *G.* 2, p. 137].

largiter posse. "Had considerable influence." *Largiter* is a rather rare adverb from *largus*, for the more common *large*. *Posse* is used absolutely=*potentem esse*, as often with adverbs. Cp. 17, 1, *plus posse*, etc.

homini. [§ 106 (1).]

collocasse. "Given in marriage."

sororem ex matre. Sc. *partam*, his half-sister, mother's daughter.

nuptum in alias civitates collocasse. The supine *nuptum* [§ 141, 5] and *in* with the accusative are used here after *collocasse*, which implies motion, *i.e.* change from one state to another; so, "*in familiam nubere*" (CIC. *pro Coel.* 14). Cp. 9, 3, *in matrimonium ducere.* The other construction

(without motion implied) is given above, *in Biturigibus collocare.*

4. **cupere Helvetiis.** "Wished well to the H." [§ 107.]

affinitatem. "Alliance by marriage," as distinct from *propinquitas* (cp. *propinquas* above), relationship by blood.

suo nomine. "On his own account." [§ 113.]

5. **Si quid accidat.** "If anything should happen," *i.e.* any ill. *Accido* is commonly of bad, *contingo* of good fortune, whilst *evenio* is neutral in sense.

spem regni obtinendi. [§§ 132,143.] On *regni* see 3, 4.

imperio. See on 13, 2, *bello Cassiano.*

6. **quod.** "Whereas." See 13, 4. Or it may be a pronoun agreeing with *proelium*, "As to the skirmish which——"

proelium equestre adversum. In Latin a conjunction is usually put between two adjectives qualifying the same substantive; *e.g. multae et graves causae*="many weighty reasons." But here *equestre proelium* make together one notion, "a cavalry-skirmish," which is qualified by *adversum*. Cp. the parallel instances in 38, 7; II. 18, 2; II. 29, 3; III. 27, 2.

paucis ante diebus. "A few days before." *Ante* is adverbial, and, in sense, qualifies *diebus*, whence its place next to it. So *paucis ante annis*, III. 20, 1. Cp. *paucis mensibus ante*, 31, 10. For ablative [§ 120].

esset factum. The subjunctive is used in the report of the answers to Caesar's questions (*reperiebat in quaerendo*). [§ 151.]

auxilio Caesari. [§ 108.]

perterritum. In his account of this skirmish (15, 1, 2) Caesar rather diminishes the serious nature of the defeat. It is only here, where he wishes to show the full extent of the treachery of Dumnorix, that we learn that it ended in a panic and complete rout of the four thousand.

19.

1. **cum—accederent.** [§ 153 (1).]

quod—quod, etc. For the use of the *anaphora*, cp. 14, 2. *Quod*="whereas." See 13, 4.

quod—traduxisset, etc. These subjunctives are dependent on *oratio obliqua*, as containing part of Caesar's thought (*arbitrabatur*). [§ 151.]

dandos curasset, etc. "Procured an exchange of hostages."

injussu. An ablative of an obsolete noun. [§ 113.] "Without his orders."

suo. *I.e.* Caesar's. See note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*b*).

ipsis. *I.e. se et civibus.* See on **1**, 1.

a magistratu Aed. *I.e.* Liscus the Vergobret.

satis causae. [§ 131.]

animadverteret. [§ 149.] The word is contracted from *animum adverteret*, "to turn one's mind to," "to notice." So specially of a magistrate, *animadvertere in aliquem*, "to take note of an offender for punishment," "to punish."

2. **His—rebus.** [§ 106 (3).]

verebatur—ne. [App. II., IV. (*A*.) II. (*a*), p. 162.]

supplicio (*sub-plico*). Lit. "a kneeling down," either in entreaty, or, as here, to receive punishment. It is constantly used of *capital* punishment.

3. **prius, quam—conaretur.** [§ 152, III. (1).] See note on *dum*, **7**, 4. For the tense, see on **7**, 1, *cum nuntiatum esset.*

quicquam. See note on *ulli*, **8**, 3.

cotidianis. "Ordinary," "every day." See on **16**, 1.

per C. Valerium Procillum. See on **3**, 6.

Galliae provinciae. *Galliae* and *provinciae* are in apposition, the latter qualifying the former like an adjective. "A leading man of provincial Gaul." Cp. **30**, 2, etc.

cui—fidem habebat. The dative *cui* depends on *fidem habebat*, which together are equivalent to a verb of trusting, *confido.* "In whom he placed the utmost confidence in all matters."

commonefacit. See note on III. 1, 2.

ipso. Sc. *Divitiaco.*

quae—sint dicta. [§ 151.] Part of what Caesar said. So too *dixerit* below.

apud se. *Se* referring to subject of the main verb *ostendit.* See note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*b*).

4. **ejus.** Sc. *Divitiaci* [§ 127]; *animi* [§ 132].

ipse. Sc. *Caesar*, as section 2 of this chapter shows.

Petit—ut statuat. "Begs Divitiacus to allow him to hear and adjudge the case of Dumnorix." *Ut statuat* stands

for *ut statuere liceat*, as is common after verbs of asking. Cp. 28, 5, *petentibus Aeduis ut in finibus suis* (*Boios*) *collocarent*.

causa cognita. *Cognoscere* in the sense of "making a legal inquiry," "hearing a case."

20.

1. ne quid. *Quis*, the indefinite pronoun, is seldom used except after *ne*, *num*, *si*, *nisi*.

gravius. "Too severe"=*gravius justo* or *solito*, a very common sense of the comparative. Cp. 16, 2.

2. plus doloris. [§ 131.]

per se. Referring to Divitiacus, the speaker. See note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*b*).

crevisset. Depends on *propterea quod*, the subject being Dumnorix.

nervis. "Strength," "power." Cp. "*Nervos belli pecuniam*" (Cic. *Phil.* V. 2, 5), "Money the sinews of war;" "*Vectigalia nervos reipublicae*" (Cic. *pro lege Manil.* 7, 17).

quibus—uteretur. *Quibus* is equivalent to *et iis*, and thus couples *uteretur* to *crevisset*, so that it too depends on *propterea quod*.

4. ipse, Divitiacus; eum, Caesar.

non sua voluntate. "Against his will."

futurum, uti—averterentur. For this *periphrasis* for the future infinitive passive, see note on *Reported Speech*, III. (*b*), *note* (1). And for the use of the infinitive (*futurum*) in a relative clause in *oratio obliqua*, where the relative *qua*=*et ea*, see the same note, II. (*d*), *note* (1).

5. cum—peteret. See note on 7, 1, and [§ 153 (1)].

rogat—faciat. The *ut* is often omitted after verbs of asking. [§ 154.]

tanti. Genitive [§ 128, *a*.] (or rather locative—Roby, § 1187) of price.

rei publicae injuriam. [§ 132.]

suum dolorem. "His own resentment."

condonare. Means "to make a present to some one;" and so is used of passing over an offence as a boon to some one who intercedes for the offender.

6. **quae—reprehendat.** [§ 149.]

Dumnorigi custodes ponit. "Sets people to watch Dumnorix." *Dumnorigi* [§ 106 (1)]; *ponit* being equivalent to *apponit*, "assigns to."

quae agat. [§ 149.]

21.

1. **exploratoribus.** See note on *Army*, § 4.

milia passuum octo consedisse ab. See note below, 22, 5.

ipsius castris. For *suis ipsius*, the antithesis being between his own camp and the enemy's camp (*hostes consedisse*). See on 1, 1.

esset. [§ 149.]

in circuitu. Literally, "in going round it," *i.e.* on the opposite side, away from the enemy, Caesar's design being to send a detachment to take the enemy in the rear, whilst he attacked them in front.

qui cognoscerent. [§ 150.] *Cognosco* is regularly used of military reconnoitring.

2. **De tertia vigilia.** See note on 12, 2.

legatum pro praetore. See note on *Army*, § 5 (*b*).

iis ducibus. "Those men as guides."

quid sui consilii sit. For the genitive [§ 130]; for the subjunctive [§ 149].

3. **eodem itinere.** [§ 121.]

4. **rei militaris peritissimus.** [§ 132.]

in M. Crassi. Sc. *exercitu.*

22.

1. **Prima luce.** [§ 120.]

cum—teneretur. See on 7, 1, and [§ 153 (1)].

non longius—passibus. [§ 124 (2).]

equo admisso. "Riding at full speed;" "with loose rein."

quem—voluerit. Dependent on *oratio obliqua* after *dicit.* [§ 151.]

a Gallicis armis—cognovisse. "Had discovered *from*."

insignibus. "Accoutrements."

2. **subducit.** "Leads up" (the slope of the hill). See on *subvexerat*, 16, 2.

3. **ne—committeret.** After *erat praeceptum*, a prohibition in *oratio obliqua*. [App. II., IV. (*A.*) II. 1, (1), p. 161.]

ipsius copiae. For *suae ipsius* (Caesar's forces). The antithesis is between Labienus' troops and Caesar's. See on 1, 1.

4. **Multo die.** "Late in the day," *i.e.* when much of it was already past. Cp. III. 26, 6, *multa nocte*.

vidisset. Dependent sentence on *oratio obliqua*, being part of the report made to Caesar. [§ 151.]

sibi. Sc. *Caesari*. See note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*d*).

5. **quo consuerat intervallo.** "At the usual distance." For *eo intervallo*, *quo* (*sequi*) *consuerat*, the antecedent being included in the relative clause. For the ablative, see the next note.

milia passuum tria ab castris. Distance, where no "motion over" is implied ("space intervening" [N. S. IX. *G. c.* (1), p. 146]), is expressed by either *accusative*, *ablative*, or *ablative* with *a* or *ab*. Where there is a verb expressing distance Caesar generally uses the accusative, except with *intervallo* and *spatio*. Where there is no verb of distance he uses accusative or ablative indifferently. See ROBY, § 1087.

23.

1. **Postridie.** An old locative or ablative like *cotidie*, 16, 1.

metiri. See note on 16, 4.

cum—oporteret. [§ 150.] *Cum* here takes the subjunctive because it defines the nature of the two days' interval ("An interval of two days remained, such that then——"), and so = *ut tum*.

milibus passuum xviii. The usual order of numerals with *milia* in Caesar. See 2, 4, etc.; for ablative [§ 124].

rei frumentariae prospiciendum. [§ 107] and [§ 144, *b*].

Bibracte. [§ 101.]

2. **per fugitivos.** See on 3, 6. *Fugitivi* are "runaway slaves," not "deserters," the word for which is *transfugae*. Cp. 27, 3.

decurionis equitum. See note on *Army*, § 5 (*f*).

3. **quod existimarent.** "By a kind of carelessness of expression the verb of saying or thinking (on which would depend the *oratio obliqua*) is often put in the subjunctive for the thing said or thought" (ROBY, § 1746). Cp. *existimarent*, **27**, 4; *diceret*, **39**, 3.

quod—commisissent. Subjunctive because subordinate to *oratio obliqua* (*existimarent*), [§ 152, II. (1)]. It gives one of the reasons in the mind of the Helvetii for thinking the Romans were afraid of them.

eo, quod. "Because of this, that they——." *Eo* here is a *causal ablative* [§ 111], and quite distinct from the *eo magis* above, which is ablative of measure. [N. S. V. *E.* p. 137.]

confiderent. Like *existimarent* above.

re frumentaria. [§ 123.]

posse intercludi. Sc. *Romanos.*

a novissimo agmine. "On the rear." Cp. 1, 4.

24.

1. **Postquam—advertit.** *Postquam* commonly takes the perfect where in English a pluperfect would be more usual.

id animum advertit. The phrase *animum advertere*, "to turn one's mind," came to be considered as containing one verbal notion "to notice," and hence was contracted to *animadvertere*, and used transitively even when uncontracted. Cp. the idiom *venit mihi in mentem alicujus*, where *venit mihi in mentem* is equivalent to *reminiscor*, and so takes the same case after it.

subducit—misit. The difference in tenses marks a difference in sense. He proceeds to lead his troops up the hill, and in the meantime sent the cavalry off. The first was a continuous action, during the progress of which the latter and instantaneous action took place.

copias—equitatum. Notice the use of *copias* = "infantry force," as distinct from *equitatus*. Cp. **48**, 4.

qui sustineret. [§ 150.]

2. **triplicem aciem.** See note on *Army*, § 7.

legionum quattuor veteranarum. The four allotted to Caesar by the senate. See note on *Army*, § 5 (*a*).

supra se. *I.e.* he was with the veterans in the van.

duas legiones, quas, etc. See 10, 3.

auxilia.
sarcinas conferri. } See note on *Army*, § 2 (*d*).

3. carris. See 3, 1.

confertissima. *Confertus* is properly the participle of *confercio*, but is here and elsewhere used as an adjective. Cp. *acceptus*, 3, 4; *exercitatissimus*, 36, 7.

rejecto equitatu phalange facta. Caesar very frequently puts two ablatives absolute together without a conjunction, of which the former gives the *circumstances*, *time*, or *cause* of the action expressed by the latter. Here the phalanx was formed on the repulse of the cavalry. Cp. 16, 4; II. 11, 5; II. 12, 5, etc.

phalange. Caesar applies the Greek term φάλαγξ, which denoted any close order of battle, to that adopted by the Gauls, as well as by the Germans (see 52, 4), in which the men crowded closely together and interlocked their shields, so as to form a wall in front of their advancing army, whilst the weight of the dense mass of men broke through the lines of the enemy opposing their charge. *συνασπισμός* is the term used of this kind of phalanx by Plutarch. Cp. "*Cum Galli structis ante se scutis starent*" (LIVY, X. 29).

sub nostram aciem. See on 16, 2, *subvexerat*.

25.

1. suo. Agrees with *equo* understood, from *equis*.

omnium equis. *I.e.* of all the mounted officers, not of the cavalry generally.

2. e loco superiore. Qualifies *missis*. Their being on the higher ground of course increased the effect of the discharge of javelins.

3. Gallis—impedimento erat. [§ 108.]

pluribus scutis, etc. The shields overlapping one another one *pilum* would often pierce two at once, and so lock them together.

cum—inflexisset. "Whenever the head had got bent they could not pull it out." *Cum* in the sense of "whenever" with the subjunctive is contrary to Caesar's general usage, but cp. III. 12, 1, *cum—aestus se incitavisset*.

sinistra. *I.e.* the arm on which the shield was carried.

multi ut. "So that many." Cp. on **6,** 1, *vix qua.*

jactato brachio. "Swung about," so as to free if possible the locked shields.

nudo corpore. "Defenceless," like the Greek γυμνός.

4. **pedem referre.** "Give ground."

mons suberat, etc. "There was a mountain near, at about a mile's distance." *Circiter* is probably an adverb, and *mille passuum* accusative, according to rule given on **22,** 5. *Mille* must be taken as a substantive on which *passuum* depends, contrary to its general adjectival use. Livy (XXI. 61) has *mille equitum,* and other instances occur in Caesar, Cicero, etc.

5. **Capto monte, etc.** "After they had reached the hill, and our men were advancing up it."

hominum milibus xv. "*With* 15,000 men." The ablative of manner, when the notion of accompaniment is strongly marked, requires *cum,* unless the noun is qualified by an attribute. Cp. *omnibus copiis,* II. **7,** 3; II. **33,** 2; *pedestribus copiis,* III. **11,** 5.

agmen claudebant. "Closed the line of march," "brought up the rear." Cp. II. **19,** 3.

novissimis praesidio erant. [§ 108.]

ex itinere—circumvenire. "Left their line of march, and began to outflank." So *ex itinere oppugnare,* II. **6,** 1; II. **12,** 2.

aperto latere. "On the undefended flank." [§ 121.] Caesar does not say which flank this was. Cp. II. **23,** 5.

6. **conversa signa intulerunt.** "Wheeling round, charged." Cp. II. **26,** 1, and see note on *Army,* § 8.

bipartito. "In two divisions." The Boii and Tulingi had hitherto taken no part in the fight, being the rearguard of the Helvetian army, but had continued their march. They came up in time to see the main body of their friends driven up the hill by the Romans, and at once attacked the latter on the flank nearest to them. To meet this new attack part of the Roman army wheeled round to face it, the rest repelled the renewed efforts of the half-defeated Helvetii, so that the Romans now were fighting on two fronts. See *Plan,* p. 29.

sustineret venientes. "Bear the brunt of the new attack.

26.

1. **ancipiti proelio.** "Twofold struggle" against two distinct attacks, rather than "doubtful struggle," which is the common usage of *anceps* in this connection. *Anceps* is compounded of *am* for *ambi* (ἀμφί), and *ceps*, contracted for *capits*, the stem of *caput*, and so means "two-headed." For the ablative [§ 113].

2. **alteri—alteri.** "The one body," *sc.* the Helvetii—"the other body," *sc.* the Boii and Tulingi.

impedimenta et carros. A kind of *Hendiadys*, since the *carri* were the waggons on which the *impedimenta* (heavy baggage) were transported.

hoc toto proelio. "In the course of this whole battle," *i.e.* at any time during it. See on 11, 3, *omni tempore*.

ab hora septima. Counting from 6 A.M., when the last night-watch ended. See note on *Army*, § 10.

vesperum. See note on 50, 3.

cum—pugnatum sit. This is not a temporal but consecutive clause, defining *hoc—proelio.* "In this battle, one in which the fighting lasted," etc. "The perfect is used in consecutive sentences of an event in past time simply regarded as such, without reference to its being contemporaneous or prior to other past events" (ROBY, § 1516).

aversum hostem. "The back of a foe."

3. **pro vallo.** "Instead of a rampart." This use of their waggons in battle was common amongst the Germans as well as the Gauls. The "laager" of the South African Boers is a similar expedient.

e loco superiore. *I.e.* they mounted on the top of the waggons, and threw their spears down on their assailants. So in III. 4, 2; III. 25, 1, of a real *vallum*.

mataras. Celtic javelins; **tragulas**, javelins slung with a thong, and used also by the Spaniards (*B. G.* V. 48).

subjiciebant. The opposite of *e loco superiore conjiciebant.* "They threw—from below."

4. **impedimentis.** [§ 119, *a.*]

5. **captus est.** Agreeing with the nearer subject in gender and number. [N. S. I. 3, *β*, p. 133.]

ea tota nocte. See above on *hoc toto proelio*, section 2.

nullam partem. [§ 102.]

intermisso. See below on section 6.

die quarto. *I.e.* counting in the day of the battle; "in three days" as we reckon.

cum—potuissent. The reason why they reached the Lingones in safety. [§ 152, I. (3).]

triduum. [§ 102.]

The slaughter in this battle, which was probably fought on the plain of Cussy-la-Colonne, near Autun (*Bibracte*), in Burgundy, must have been enormous. According to chapter 29 the number of Helvetii, etc., at the outset of their expedition was 368,000, 92,000 being fighting men, the rest old men, women, and children. 130,000 survived the battle, so that we may infer what Plutarch tells us definitely (*Life of Caesar*, ch. xviii.), that at the capture of the baggage-waggons, in which the women and children were carried on the march, the slaughter by the Romans was quite indiscriminate.

6. **Lingonas.** Cp. 14, 2.

litteras—misit, ne juvarent. A prohibition dependent on *oratio obliqua* [App. II., IV. (*A.*) II. 1, (2), p. 161], the command being implied in the *litteras misit.* "He sent a despatch—forbidding them to help."

qui juvissent. Dependent subjunctive in *oratio obliqua*, being part of what Caesar said in his despatch. [§ 151.]

eodem loco. [N. S. V. *G.* p. 137.]

quo Helvetios. Sc. *haberet.* "And that he should look upon any who gave them help in the same light as the H.," *i.e.* in the light of enemies.

triduo intermisso. *Intermitto* has two meanings—(1) to interpose or place between; (2) to let drop, cease from. It is used here, and in section 4, in the former sense, *i.e.* three days being interposed, or, after three days' interval; in the latter sense in section 5, *itinere intermisso*, the march being let drop, or intermitted. Cp. *intermittere proelium*, III. 5, 3.

27.

2. **eum convenissent.** Accusative after the transitive compound of an intransitive verb. [N. S. III. *B.* (3), p. 134.]

essent. Dependent subjunctive in *oratio obliqua*, being part of what Caesar said. [§ 151.]

3. **postquam—pervenit.** See on **24,** 1.

servos. Cp. **23,** 2, *fugitivos.*

perfugissent. Subjunctive, as being part of Caesar's demand. [§ 151.]

4. **Dum ea conquiruntur.** [§ 153 (2).] Notice *ea* used of persons as well as things. Cp. **29,** 2, *quarum rerum.*

pagi. See on **12,** 4.

supplicio. "Capital punishment." See on **19,** 2.

ignorari. "Unnoticed."

existimarent. See on **23,** 3, *quod existimarent.*

prima nocte. "Early in the night." The collection of hostages, etc., was not completed on the first day, and in the night intervening (*nocte intermissa*) between the first day and the second the six thousand attempted to escape.

Rhenum finesque Germ. The conjunction *que* is often used to add, not a *different* thing, but a new aspect of the thing already mentioned. "The Rhine, which forms the German frontier." The reason why Caesar adds *fines Germ.* is given in section 4 of the next chapter.

28.

1. **resciit.** "When C. learned this." *Resciscere,* "to find out some secret or unexpected occurrence." *Renuntiari* is used of reports brought in by scouts, etc. See **10,** 1.

quorum. Placed before its antecedent *his.*

conquirerent. The object, which is not expressed, is "the fugitives."

si—vellent. [§ 151], being part of Caesar's order.

sibi. Referring to the subject of the main verb in *oratio obliqua.* See note on *Se and Suus,* II. (*b*). For dative, see [§ 106, (2)].

purgati esse. "To clear themselves in his eyes." [§ 94.]

in hostium numero habuit. "Counted as foes," *i.e.* put to death.

3. **in fines suos.** *Suos* refers to the subject of *reverti.* See note on *Se and Suus,* I. (*b*).

unde erant profecti. The use of the indicative shows that this is not part of Caesar's order (*jussit*), but an explanatory

remark added by the historian. Cp. *patebant*, 2, 4. So also with *erat* and *incenderant* below.

quo—tolerarent. [§ 150.]

Allobrogibus imperavit, ut—facerent. Verbs of commanding govern the dative [§ 106 (4)], and are followed by *ut* with the subjunctive; to both which rules *jubeo* is an exception. See above, *Helvetios jussit reverti.*

copiam iis facerent. "Supply them with." For dative [§ 106, (3)].

ipsos. Sc. *Helvetios*, etc.

oppida vicosque. See on 5, 2.

4. ea ratione. [§ 113.]

vacare. "To be unoccupied." Caesar wanted to keep the warlike Helvetii as a bulwark for the Province against the Germans.

bonitatem agrorum. "Fertility of the country."

5. petentibus—ut collocarent. See note on 19, 4.

egregia virtute—cogniti. "Known to be a people of singular courage." The ablative is one of quality [§ 115], and *esse* must be supplied after *cogniti erant.*

Aeduis petentibus. Ablative absolute [§ 125], or perhaps dative after *concessit* [§ 106 (3)]. *Boios* depends on *collocarent*, so that *concessit* has no direct object expressed. "He granted their request."

postea. After the war with Vercingetorix. (*B. G.* VII.)

parem juris, etc. "A share of civil rights and freedom equal with their own." See note on II. 19, 2.

29.

1. tabulae. "Lists." The Romans ordinarily used two thin and small boards joined by a hinge, and covered on the inner surface with wax, for writing letters, keeping accounts, and other manuscript of a temporary character. The writing was done with a pointed metal pencil (*stilus*). The leaves of these *tabulae* opened and shut like a book, so as to protect the wax surface when closed.

litteris Graecis confectae. "Made up in Greek characters." In VI. 14 it is said that the Druids kept their accounts in Greek writing. This practice was probably borrowed from the Greek traders (*mercatores*) of Massilia.

That a knowledge of the Greek *language* was not general amongst the Gauls is shown by V. 48, where Caesar relates that he wrote certain despatches in Greek in case they should be intercepted by the Nervii.

exisset. [§ 149.]

possent. [§ 150.]

et item—pueri. There is a sudden and ungrammatical change from the subordinate relative clauses (*qui—qui*) to a *co-ordinate* clause, coupled by *et.* In strict grammar *pueri*, etc., should be genitives dependent on *ratio;* as it is, a verb must be supplied to suit the sense from *confecta est*, *e.g. conscripti sunt.* "In which list an account was drawn up of the number of those who had left their home, who were able to bear arms, and likewise the children, old men, and women (were entered) separately."

pueri, senes mulieresque. When three or more nouns stand side by side in the same grammatical construction, they are either (1) *all* connected by conjunctions; or (2) *none;* or (3) *-que* is appended to the last, as here.

2. **Quarum—rerum.** Notice *rerum* used of persons. Caesar is thinking rather of the numerical quantities than of the persons. Cp. 27, 4.

capitum Helvetiorum. We speak in English of so many "head" of cattle, but do not apply the term to human beings.

ad milia. See on 4, 2.

3. **Summa—fuerunt.** The verb here agrees in number with the complement instead of the subject [N. S. I. 2, p. 133]; the whole expression *ad milia* being equivalent to a plural nominative. See note on II. 33, 8.

domum. [§ 101.]

censu. "A calculation of the number." The *census* at Rome was originally the registration of the property, rather than of the number, of citizens. It was held every five years, to determine the position of each citizen in the state, which, according to the constitution ascribed to King Servius Tullius, depended on the amount of his property.

milium c et x. According to these numbers 20,000 disappeared between the battle and the return home. (Cp. 26, 5.) Caesar only accounts for 6000, the men of the *pagus Verbigenus* (27, 4; 28, 1).

30.

1. **totius Galliae.** *I.e.* all *Celtic* Gaul, as in sections 3, 4, etc. Cp. *Introduction*, § 2 (4).

gratulatum. [§ 141, 5.]

2. **Helvetiorum injuriis pop. R.** "Injuries done by the H. to the Roman people," *populi* being an objective genitive, [§ 132]; *Helvetiorum* genitive of the author [§ 127].

ex usu. "To the advantage of."

terrae Galliae. The two genitives are in apposition. Cp. *mare Oceanum*, III. 7, 2; *Galliae provinciae*, 19, 3, etc.

3. **eo consilio.** [§ 113.]

florentissimis rebus. [§ 125, *a.*]

toti Galliae. [§ 106, *a.*]

domicilio. [§ 108.]

ex magna copia. Sc. *locorum.*

stipendiarias. From *stipem* and *pendo;* lit. "those paying a sum of money;" *i.e.* tributaries.

4. **Caesaris voluntate.** See on 7, 3.

ex communi consensu. "With" or "according to the common consent." The Gauls asked leave to hold a council in order to obtain the common consent of the Celtic tribes before making their appeal to Caesar.

5. **concilio.** [§ 108.]

jurejurando. See on 3, 6.

enuntiaret. See on 17, 3. "Disclose the proceedings."

nisi quibus—mandatum esset. "Except such as their common decision charged with that duty." *Quibus* is dative after *mandatum esset* [§ 106 (2)]: *mandatum esset* is impersonal passive of an intransitive verb [N. S. IX. *E. b.* p. 144], and is in the subjunctive dependent on *oratio obliqua* [§ 151].

sanxerunt, ne quis. "Forbade any one to." *Sancio* itself means "to bind," and followed by *ne*, "to bind a person (by oath or penalty) not to do a thing."

31.

1. **idem.** Nominative plural contracted. *Iidem* is not found in MSS., *eidem* not frequently. So with *iisdem* and *eisdem* (Roby, § 378).

qui ante fuerant. Sc. "with Caesar." See **30**, 1.

sibi. Referring to subject of *petierunt.* See note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*b*).

secreto. "Apart from any other audience than Caesar;" so here = "secretly." See note on **18**, 2.

2. **Caesari.** [§ 106, *a.*]

id. Explained by the *ne—enuntiarentur.* See on **5**, 1.

dixissent. Pluperfect subjunctive in *oratio obliqua* for future perfect in *oratio recta.* See note on *Reported Speech*, III. (*b*), *note* (2). So *enuntiatum esset*, below.

3. **Galliae totius.** Celtic Gaul, as in **30**, 1, etc.

factiones. The regular Latin word for "political parties," as here. The word is derived from *facere*, in the sense which this has in the phrase *facere ab* or *cum aliquo*, "to side with a person."

Arvernos. In *B. G.* VI. 12, Caesar states that on his entrance into Gaul the rival states were the Aedui and Sequani: but the Sequani and Arverni were evidently in close alliance, as is shown in section 4 of this chapter.

4. **potentatu.** A rare word, not occurring again in Caesar, and used of "political supremacy," which was the object for which the rival states were contending.

mercede. [§ 117.]

arcesserentur. The *ar* for *ad* in composition is found in *arbiter*, from *ad* and *beto*, an old verb connected with Greek βαίνω, βή-σομαι; and in the old Latin word *arvorsum* = *adversum.* Cp. the interchange of *d* and *r* in *audio* and *aures.* *Arcesso* is probably a new present formed from an old *future stem* in *-so* (like the Greek future, *e.g.* λύσω) of *arcio* (*ad-cio*). Cp. the futures *jusso, faxo;* and the similar present forms *capesso, lacesso, facesso.* Cp. II. **20**, 1; III. **11**, 2.

5. **copias.** "Resources," "wealth," as in **3**, 5.

feri ac barbari. *Ferus* is the true Latin word, equivalent to the *foreign* and *imported* word *barbarus* (βάρβαρος) in its secondary sense of "uncivilized." *Barbarus* is perhaps used here in its original sense of "speaking an unintelligible language," "foreign." It was probably formed to imitate the apparently unmeaning sounds of a foreign speech. Cp. "*Barbarus hic ego sum quia non intelligor ulli*" (Ov. *Trist.* V. 10, 37).

adamassent. The *ad* in composition here intensifies the meaning of the simple verb, "fall in love with." Cp. *ad-dubitare*, "to have strong doubts."

centum et xx milium. Contrary to the usual order of words in Caesar. See on **2**, 4.

6. **clientes.** "Dependent states." See on **4**, 2.

semel atque iterum. So in English, "once and again," "again and again."

senatum. A Roman name applied to a foreign institution. So in II. **28**, 1, Caesar speaks of *senatores* of the Nervii They were probably the leading men of the tribe who were members of the national council.

7. **Quibus proeliis fractos—coactos esse.** For the relative pronoun followed by accusative-and-infinitive construction in *oratio obliqua*, see note on *Reported Speech*, II. (*d*), *note* (1).

pop. Rom. hospitio amicitiaque. *Hospitium* (*προξενία*) was an arrangement between two states by which the members of each received hospitality from the other when they visited it. It was a less strong bond than *amicitia*, which was a compact by which each state engaged to adopt a friendly policy where the interests of the other were concerned, without any definite treaty of alliance (*societas*).

jurejurando. See on **3**, 6.

sese. Sc. *the Aedui.* See note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*d*).

quominus. After a "verb of hindrance" [App. II., IV. (*C.*) V. note (1), p. 167], since *recuso* (*re-causa*) means "to give reason against" doing a thing.

8. **se.** Sc. *Divitiacus.* See note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*d*).

qui—non potuerit. See note on **14**, 6, *consuerint.*

9. **Romam ad senatum.** "To the senate at Rome." See note on **54**, 2.

postulatum. [§ 141, 5.]

obsidibus. The simple ablative is used here instead of the ablative of the agent with *ab*, because it was not the hostages, but the *having given* hostages that would bind him.

10. **tertiam partem.** See on **12**, 2, *tres copiarum partes.*

altera tertia parte. "A second third-part."

Harudum. Genitive dependent on the whole phrase, *milia hominum* XXIV.

11. **paucis annis.** "Time within which" [§ 120].

omnes. "They all," *i.e.* the speaker and his fellow Gauls.

futurum esse—ut pellerentur. Periphrasis for future infinitive passive. See note on *Reported Speech*, III. (*b*), *note* (1).

hanc consuetudinem victus. "This customary mode of life," *i.e.* of the Gauls, as opposed to *illa*, "that of the Germans." For *victus* = "way of living," cp. Horace, *Satt.* II. 2, 63, "*Quali igitur victu sapiens utetur?*"

12. From here to the end of the speech Caesar changes to the primary tenses, *i.e.* the original tenses used by the speaker; perhaps because Divitiacus in these sections refers to the future, whilst hitherto (except in section 11, where the future sense is otherwise marked) his reference is to the past. See note on *Reported Speech*, III. (*b*), *note* (4).

omnia exempla cruciatusque. "All kinds of torture." The *que* is explanatory, as in **27**, 4, *Rhenum finesque Germanorum*. See note there, and cp. III. **3**, 1, *opus hibernorum munitionesque.*

si qua—non. The *non* does not belong in sense to the *si*, in which case Caesar would have written *nisi*, but goes closely with *ad nutum*, "if anything be done not at his beck or will." Cp. **35**, 4, *si non impetraret*, and **36**, 5.

13. **temerarium.** "Hasty."

posse. Without the subject (*se*) expressed. Cp. *rogare*, **7**, 3, and note there; also *dubitare*, below, section 15.

14. **Nisi si quid.** The *si* is superfluous to the sense, and its being kept is perhaps due to *si quid* being looked on as one word = *aliquid.*

auxilii. [§ 130.]

Gallis. [§ 144, *a.*]

ut emigrent. Explaining *idem.* See on **5**, 1.

15. **quin—sumat.** [App. II., IV. (*C.*) V. (2), p. 167.]

16. **Rhenum traducatur.** See on **12**, 2, *flumen traduxisse.*

Ariovisti injuria. "Wrong done by A." [§ 127.] See on **30**, 2.

32.

1. **Hac oratione habita.** "This speech being delivered."

2. **unos.** Used in the plural with Sequani, which, as the

name of a people, is a word without singular, *i.e.* is plural in form and singular in sense. [N. E. IV. *A.* p. 128.]

quas—facerent. [§ 151.] Subordinate to *oratio obliqua*, as containing part of Caesar's thought (*animadvertit*).

quae causa esset. [§ 149.]

3. **respondere—permanere.** Historical infinitives. [§ 140, 2.] Cp. **16**, 1.

quaereret—posset. [§ 153, (1).]

idem. Masculine.

4. **coram**=*co-oram.* Compounded of *cum* and *os* (*oris*); literally, "face to face," and so used only with persons.

crudelitatem—horrerent. *Horreo* is often used transitively in Cicero and other authors, but only here in Caesar.

5. **tamen.** "At any rate," "after all." The expression is very elliptical, implying in full, "To the rest (although they might suffer much) nevertheless," etc. Cp. **40**, 5.

Sequanis. Dative with *perferendi essent.* [§ 144, 2.]

33.

1. **beneficio suo.** See **35**, 2.

finem injuriis facturum. [§ 106, 1.] "Would put an end to his wrongdoings."

2. **secundum ea.** "Next to, or besides, those arguments of Divitiacus." *Secundum* = *sequondum* (see note on **16**, 1, *cotidie*) is derived from *sequor.* Cp. *secundo flumine*, "down the stream," the river as it were following.

putaret. [§ 149.]

cogitandam. "Ought to be taken into consideration."

fratres consanguineosque. Cp. **31**, 7. So Cicero calls the Aedui *fratres nostri* (*Fam.* VII. 10). Perhaps the fiction of relationship was based on some claim by the Aedui to Trojan descent, such as the Arverni boasted. "*Arvernique ausi Latio se fingere fratres Sanguine ab Iliaco populi*" (LUCAN. *Pharsalia*, I. 427).

quod. The relative pronoun, and not parallel to the *quod —intellegebat* above.

3. **consuescere.** *Consuesco*, "I grow accustomed;" *consuevi*, "I am accustomed."

4. **sibi.** Refers to the subject of the infinitive, *temperaturos.* See note on *Se and Suus*, I. (*b*).

quin. [App. II., IV. (*C.*) V. (2), p. 167]; *sibi temperare*, "to refrain," being a verb of "hindrance."

Rhodanus divideret. *I.e.* the Rhone, and that only, separated them.

quam maturrime. See on **3**, 1. *Maturrime* is a superlative formed from *maturus*, after the analogy of *prosperrimus* from *prosperus*, *celerrimus* from *celer*, etc. The regular form *maturissime* is more common.

5. **spiritus.** "Haughty airs;" so *animi* is used in like sense. Cp. Livy, XXIV. 22, "*Inflata regiis animis ac muliebri spiritu.*"

34.

1. **placuit ei ut.** "He resolved to——"

qui postularent. [§ 150.]

locum medium utriusque. "A place equally distant from each of them." *Utriusque* is used after the analogy of the partitive genitive with *medius* (cp. *medium viae*); the *space*, of which the spot chosen would be the middle point, being defined by reference to the two persons who were at either end of it. Cp. Ovid, *Metam.* VI. 409: "*Qui locus est medius juguli summique lacerti.*"

colloquio. [§ 108.]

velle. The infinitive depends on a verb of *saying* to be supplied from *postularent* (*e.g. et dicerent*).

sese. Referring to Caesar, the *logical* subject of the main verb of the *oratio obliqua*, since *placuit ei* = "he resolved." See note on *Se and Suus*, III.

summis utriusque rebus. "Matters of the highest moment to both of them."

2. **ipsi.** For *sibi ipsi*, as an antithesis to *ille* below, see on **1**, 1.

si quid—opus esset. *Opus est* means literally "there is work to be done," and so is constructed—

(1) With an ablative of the instrument [§ 112], and a dative of the person to whom the work belongs [§ 107], *e.g. opus est mihi gladio*, "I have work to be done with a sword," *i.e.* "I need a sword." When the thing needed is an action the ablative of the perfect participle passive is used, *opus est facto*. See **42**, 5.

(2) With a *genitive* in Livy and later writers; *e.g.* "*temporis opus esse*" (LIVY, XXII. 51).

(3) As the complement of *est*, the thing needed being the subject of *est; e.g.* "*Dux nobis et auctor opus est*" (CIC. *Fam.* II. 6). This construction is used here and in II. 22, 1. See ROBY, §§ 1225, 1226.

si quid—velit. The change of tense here is due to the desire of distinguishing the two forms of conditional sentence used in the passage. Ariovistus says, "If I had any need of Caesar (which I have not), I would have come to him. If he wants anything with me (as he does), he ought to come to me." The first sentence is an instance of an *unfulfilled condition*, the proper tenses for which are the past subjunctive: the second sentence is an instance of a *pure supposition*, the tenses for which are present indicatives. But the ordinary sequence of *oratio obliqua* would put both these in past subjunctives; to avoid the ambiguity thus arising the sequence is changed. Cp. 40, 15, *sequatur.*

si quid—se velit. A colloquial idiom, in which *se* is probably the direct object of *velit; quid* the accusative (cognate) denoting the extent of the action of the verb (ROBY, § 1094). *Se* refers to Ariovistus. See note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*b*).

3. **commeatu.** Properly of "provisions for an army" (39, 1); so here more generally = "preparations," "expense."

molimento. "Effort," "exertion," *molio* = "to move a heavy body" (*moles*).

quid. Not *quod*, for the sentence is a dependent interrogative. [§ 149.]

negotii. Depends on *quid* [§ 130].

35.

2. **affectus.** "Although treated."

in consulatu suo. *I.e.* in the previous year, B.C. 59, after Ariovistus' victory at Admagetobriga (31, 12).

rex atque amicus. See note on 3, 4.

gratiam referret. The plural of *gratia* is used in the sense of "thanks," with *ago*, the singular usually with other verbs.

ut—gravaretur. Explaining *hanc gratiam.* See note on 5, 1.

venire. Dependent on *gravaretur.*

neque—putaret. "And declined to speak or hear a word on a subject of common concern to them." *Cognoscere* literally is "to find out" (what Caesar had to say).

postularet. *I.e.* Caesar; the new subject is sufficiently indicated by the *ab eo*, which could only be used referring to Ariovistus.

3. **redderet—permitteret.** See note on *Reported Speech*, II. (*c*).

voluntate ejus. See note on **7**, 3.

4. **Si fecisset—si non impetraret.** Notice the abrupt change of subject, without indication. The sense of the passage, however, makes a mistake almost impossible.

si non. The *non* must be taken closely with *impetraret;* "if he fail in obtaining his demands." See on **31**, 12.

M. Messala, M. Pisone coss. The date of these consuls was B.C. 61.

censuisset. *Censeo* was the word used by senators in declaring their vote or opinion (*sententia*) in a debate: so here it is used of the resolution of the whole body.

Galliam provinciam. For the apposition cp. **30**, 2.

obtineret. Subjunctive in *oratio obliqua*, being a part of the *senatusconsultum*, which is itself dependent on *oratio obliqua*, as part of Caesar's answer to Ariovistus.

quod—facere posset. "So far as he could do so;" literally "as regards that which he could do." A regular formula in commissions.

commodo. Ablative of manner [§ 113]. See note on **7**, 3.

se. Repeated, after the long parenthesis *quoniam—defenderet.* Cp. notes on II. **25**, 1, and III. **22**, 4.

36.

1. **alterius.** "A second person."

suum arbitrium. *Suum* refers to the subject of the infinitive *consuesse.* See note on *Se and Suus*, I. (*b*).

2. **suo jure uteretur.** *Suo* here refers to the subject of *uteretur;* but in *in suo jure*, just after, to the subject of the main verb *respondit.* See note on *Se and Suus*, I. (*a*) and II. (*b*).

3. **stipendiarios.** See on **30**, 3.

4. **suo adventu.** *I.e.* Caesar's arrival. *Sibi*="for Ariovistus," as above in section 2, and below, section 6.

5. **neque iis.** *Neque,* "but not," coupling the two clauses, and not corresponding to the following *neque.*

injuria. [§ 113.]

eo, quod convenisset. "The terms which had been agreed on." *Convenire* = "to come together," "to fit;" so "to be arranged," or "agreed on."

si—non fecissent. See on **31, 12.**

fraternum nomen. "The title of brothers."

longe afuturum. "Would be of no avail," "would be far from serving them." *Decsse* is commoner than *abesse* in this sense: but cp. "*Ne—longe tibi Juppiter absit*" (Ov. *Met.* IV. 649); "*Quo plus intererat, eo plus aberas a me*" (Cic. *Planc.* V. 13).

6. **Quod.** "Whereas." See on **13, 4.**

sibi. Ariovistus. *Se,* Caesar. *Secum,* Ariovistus. *Sua* refers to *neminem.*

7. **congrederetur.** See note on *Reported Speech,* II. (*c*).

intellecturum. Sc. *eum.* The subject is not expressed, being the same as that of *congrederetur.*

quid—possent. [§ 149.]

exercitatissimi. See note on *acceptus,* **3, 4**; *confertissima,* **24, 3.**

inter annos xiv. "During fourteen years."

37.

1. **eodem tempore—et.** *Et* is much more rare than *ac, atque,* after words expressing similarity or difference, *idem, par, alius, aeque,* etc. "This message was brought to Caesar, and ambassadors came . . . . at one and the same time." See on II. **19, 2.**

ab Aeduis et a Treveris. The repetition of the preposition shows that they were separate embassies from the two tribes.

2. **questum.** [§ 141, 5.]

popularentur. [§ 151]. Subjunctive in *oratio obliqua,* as being part of the complaint.

transportati. *I.e.* brought over the Rhine by Ariovistus. See **31, 10.**

fines eorum. *I.e. Aeduorum.* For the irregular use of *eorum* referring to the main subject of *oratio obliqua,* see note on **5, 3.**

pacem Ariovisti. [§ 127.] Peace is looked on as belonging to A., being in his control.

3. **Treveri autem.** Sc. *veniebant questum.*

pagos centum. Cp. *B. G.* IV. 1 : *Hi* (*sc. Suebi*) *centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armatorum bellandi causa ex finibus educunt.* Here *pagos*, the name of the districts, is put for their inhabitants. See note on 12, 4.

ad ripas. The plural of *ripa* is used here not of both banks, but of one bank and the neighbouring country. So, too, in 54, 1; II. 5, 5.

conarentur. For imperfect indicative of *oratio recta;* "were trying."

4. **sibi.** [§ 144, *a.*] Cp. 38, 2, *sibi praecavendum.* See note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*d*).

veteribus copiis. "The forces already in Gaul."

resisti. Impersonal passive of an intransitive verb. [N. S. IX. *E. b.* p. 144.]

5. **magnis itineribus.** "By forced marches." [§ 113.]

38.

1. **tridui viam.** [§ 128], *tridui* being equivalent to *trium dierum, i.e.* genitive with epithet. Cp. *trium mensum cibaria*, 5, 2.

a suis finibus. See note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*d*).

occupandum. Gerundive attraction [§ 143], since the accusative of the gerund is never used with a direct object. (Roby, § 1377.)

quod. Agreeing with the predicate of *est* (*oppidum*), instead of with its antecedent. See on II. 1, 1, *Belgas, quam tertiam esse partem*, etc.

profecisse. "Advanced." Cp. the meaning of *proficiscor*, the inceptive form from *proficio*, [§ 71, II.]

3. **usui.** [§ 108.]

facultas. Literally "easiness:" hence "power" or "opportunity," when referred to *actions;* when referred to *means*, "abundance:" and in the plural "wealth." Cp. 18, 3; II. 1, 4.

4. **muniebatur.** The imperfect here expresses a continu

ous state in past time ("was strong"), not a continuous action ("was being fortified").

ad ducendum bellum. "For prolonging the war" (see on **16**, 3), *i.e.* till the Suebi arrived.

circino. "With a pair of compasses."

5. non amplius pedum MDC. *Quam* is commonly omitted (without changing the construction) after *amplius*, *plus*, and *minus*, with numbers in expressions of distance, size, age, etc. (Roby, § 1273.) *Pedum* depends on *spatium* [§ 128]. See on **8**, 1.

intermittit. "Leaves a gap" (of dry land); "does not flow." See on **26**, 6. It is here intransitive. Cp. **41**, 5; II. **25**, 1.

magna altitudine. [§ 115.]

ripae. Subject of *contingant*, *radices* being the object.

6. arcem. Predicate with *efficit*; "makes into a citadel."

7. magnis nocturnis—itineribus. "Forced marches by night and day." Here, as in **18**, 6, two epithets are used without a conjunction, referring to one noun, because one of them (*nocturnis*) makes up one notion with the noun, "a night march."

praesidium. "A garrison."

39.

1. commeatus. Of military stores generally, corn, fodder, etc. Cp. III. **3**, 1.

moratur. [§ 153 (2).]

ex percontatione. "In consequence of the questions."

vocibus. "Talk."

ingenti magnitudine. [§ 115.]

sese. The sense of the passage shows that the pronoun refers to the Gauls only, not the traders.

aciem oculorum. "The keen glance of their eyes."

mentes animosque. "Reason and courage."

2. tribunis militum, praefectis, etc. See note on *Army*, § 5 (*d*) and (*f*).

3. alius alia causa illata. "Who, bringing forward various excuses, asked leave." Notice that in the phrase corresponding to the English, "one bringing forward one excuse,

another bringing forward another," the Latin only *expresses* the latter half, *alius alia causa illata.*

ad proficiscendum. Dependent on *causam*, not with *necessariam.*

diceret. See note on *existimarent*, **23**, 3.

ejus voluntate. See on **7**, 3.

4. **vultum fingere.** "Assume a cheerful expression."

tabernaculis. See note on *Army*, § 10.

5. **totis castris.** Ablative of place. [N. S. V. *G.* 1, p. 137.]

testamenta obsignabantur. "Wills were made," lit. "sealed up," the seal being placed on the string which was tied round the closed *tabulae* (see on **29**, 1). Cp. Plaut. *Bacch.* IV. 4, 76: "*Cedo tu ceram ac linum actutum; age obliga obsigna cito.*"

milites. *I.e.* the private soldiers.

centuriones, quique equ. praeerant. See note on *Army*, § 5 (*c*).

6. **ipsos.** For *se ipsos*, in antithesis to *Ariovistum.* See on **1**, 1.

ut—posset. Depends on *timere.* (*Ut=ne non*, "lest not.")

supportari. "Brought up the country." Cp. *subvexerat*, **16**, 2; see also on **40**, 11.

7. **nuntiarant.** The pluperfect is used of what had occurred before, and had caused the rebuke (*incusavit*) in the next chapter.

castra moveri ac signa ferri. "The camp to be broken up, and the standards to advance," *i.e.* the soldiers who followed the standards to begin their march.

dicto audientes fore. *Audiens* is used, especially in the phrase *dicto audiens*, as an adjective, with the meaning of "obedient." Hence the dative [§ 106 (4)].

neque signa laturos. *I.e.* the *signiferi* (see note on *Army*, § 8) would refuse to advance, so that the order for the army to march would be ineffectual.

40.

1. **omnium ordinum centurionibus.** See note on *Army*, § 5 (*e*).

eos. *I.e.* all the members of the council, centurions being the lowest rank admitted.

incusavit. "Reproached."

2. **ducerentur.** [§ 149.]

quod—putarent. [§ 151.] Subjunctive, as containing the reason Caesar alleged for blaming them. "He blamed them, because (he said) they thought——"; "he blamed them for thinking——".

se consule. *Se* referring to Caesar. See note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*d*). Cp. for the facts, **35**, 2.

3. **cur—judicaret.** The subjunctive is used here (in a question in the third person in *oratio obliqua*) as representing a subjunctive in *oratio recta* (*cur—judicet?*). See note on *Reported Speech*, II. (*b*), *note* (1).

quisquam. See note on **8**, 3. The question here is equivalent to a negative, since the answer would be negative; *i.e.* "there is no reason why any one should decide."

officio. The duty imposed by gratitude of acting in a friendly spirit towards the Romans.

Sibi persuaderi. [N. S. IX. E. *b.* and *c.* p. 144.]

repudiaturum. From *re-* and *ped-* (the stem of *pes*, "foot"); "to spurn" or "reject."

4. **bellum intulisset.** "Had attacked them." Caesar puts the responsibility of war on Ariovistus.

vererentur. } See note on *Reported Speech*, II. (*b*).
desperarent. }

sua. Refers to subject of *desperarent*.

ipsius. For *sua ipsius* (see **1**, 1), referring to the subject of the main verb on which the *oratio obliqua* depends; *i.e. Caesar dixit* is implied in *incusavit*.

5. **Factum periculum.** "Trial had been made." *Periculum* comes from the same root as *ex-perior*, *peritus*, and the Greek πέρας, πειράω.

ejus hostis. Sc. *the Germans*, not Ariovistus. For the genitive [§ 132].

memoria. See on **12**, 5.

meritus. [§ 94.]

cum—videbatur. A very singular use of the mood of *oratio recta* in the middle of a long piece of *oratio obliqua*. The indicative is not infrequent in dependent clauses in *oratio obliqua*, which contain a statement of the *writer*, not of the person whose speech is being reported; *e.g. concesserat* in III.

2, 1. But the clause *cum—videbatur* is an actual part of Caesar's speech to his soldiers. Perhaps the irregularity is due to a desire to keep the sense of *cum* clear; since in *oratio recta, cum* meaning "at which time" is constructed with the indicative. Translate "At which time it was considered that," etc.

servili tumultu. Ablative of "time when." See note on *bello Cassiano*, **13**, 2.

tumultus. A word used technically of any sudden war *in Italy, e.g.* an irruption of Gauls, or revolt of slaves. In such case all citizens were bound to serve, and were summoned by the signal of flags hung out from the Capitol by the magistrate appointed to command the hasty levies (*exercitus tumultuarius*). The reference here is to the slaves' revolt under Spartacus, a gladiator of Capua (B.C. 73-71), who succeeded in defying the Roman armies for three years, but was finally defeated by P. Crassus, and fell in the battle. Many of the slaves who joined Spartacus were Germans taken captive by Marius in his victories over the Cimbri and Teutones. See *Biographical Index.*

tamen. Answers to an unexpressed *quanquam*, as in **32**, 5, *reliquis tamen.* "Who (although they were Germans) yet had the advantage of Roman military training," *i.e.* had been taught the Roman drill, and the use of Roman arms in the gladiator's training school.

sublevarent. "Assisted."

quae. Neuter plural, referring to two antecedents of different genders [§ 92, 2, *a*].

6. **Ex quo—posse.** See note on *Reported Speech*, II. (*d*), *note* (1).

boni. Depends on *quantum.* [§ 131.]

inermos. (*In-arma.*) From a nominative *inermus*, less common than *inermis.* So *exanimis* and *exanimus, sublimis* and *sublimus*, are found. Caesar is referring to the rude and ineffective arms which were all that Spartacus' slaves had at the outbreak of the revolt.

7. **superarint.** The object not expressed is to be supplied from the *quibuscum* above.

superarint—potuerint. The change of tenses (cp. *superassent*, at the end of section 6) is made to show that the original tense of the *oratio recta* was a *perfect*, "*have* overcome," not an *aorist*, like *superassent*, "overcame."

qui. *I.e.* the Helvetii, who had beaten the Germans in battle, and been beaten by the Romans.

8. **defatigatis Gallis.** Ablative absolute. Ordinarily the accusative would be used as the object of the infinitive *vicisse*. The construction is varied here because of the distance between *Gallis* and *vicisse;* and the participles *desperantes, dispersos,* imply an accusative pronoun as the *grammatical* object of the verb. "The Gauls being wearied out . . . A. conquered *them.*"

multos menses. [§ 102 (1).]

castris—tenuisset. "Entrenched himself in a camp amongst the fens." *Castris* and *paludibus* are instrumental ablatives [§ 112].

sui potestatem fecisset. "Had given them an opportunity of approaching him." For the genitive [§ 132, *a*].

9. **Cui rationi.** The relative clause precedes that of the antecedent (*hac—posse*). "But not even A. himself hoped that Roman armies could be entrapped by tactics for which there might have been room——"

10. **in rei frum. simulationem.** "To the pretext of the corn supply," *i.e.* of the supposed difficulty of procuring it.

conferrent. "Attribute to" or "lay on;" so often with *culpam, causam,* etc.

arroganter. From *ad-rogare;* "asking more than their due;" "presumptuously."

de officio desperare—praescribere. *Officio* seems here used in slightly different senses with the two verbs; implying *dutifulness* or *diligence* with *desperare,* and *duties* with *praescribere.*

11. **subministrare.** The *sub* gives the sense of *supplying deficiencies,* as in *consul suffectus* (a consul elected to fill a vacancy), *suppleo,* and perhaps in *supportari,* **39**, 6; **48**, 2.

frumenta. See note on **16**, 2.

12. **dicto audientes.** See note on **39**, 7.

Quod—dicantur. The present tense is probably intended to signify that the rumour of mutiny was still current, *i.e.* it is used of a present incompleted action, like *traducat* in **44**, 12, *q. v.*

laturi. [§ 94.]

fuerit. Perfect of a general, and therefore always present, truth. See note on **14**, 4, *velint.*

avaritiam esse convictam. *Convincere aliquem,* "to prove a person guilty or wrong," is the usual construction; but *convincere aliquid alicui,* "to prove a thing" (fault or crime) "against a person," is also found.

13. **perpetua vita.** "All through his life." For the ablative see note on *bello Cassiano,* **13,** 2; and cp. *Helvetiorum bello* below. *Perpetuus* is derived from *per* and the root of *pateo,* of an unbroken surface, whilst *continuus* (*con-teneo*) signifies regular succession. See **48,** 3.

14. **longiorem** = *longinquiorem,* "more distant." Cp. Virg. *Aen.* IX. 63: "*Collecta fatigat edendi ex longo rabies.*"

collaturus fuisset. "He had intended to defer." *Confero* is rare in the sense of *differo:* for another meaning of the word see above, section 10.

repraesentaturum. "Do at once;" literally, "to bring back to the present" from the past or future. Cp. the mercantile use of the word = "to pay ready money."

de quarta vigilia. See note on **12,** 2; note on *Army,* § 10.

pudor. "Feeling of shame" at doing a disgraceful thing; "sense of honour."

valeret. "Were the strong" or "ruling motive."

15. **si—sequatur.** For future indicative of *oratio recta,* see on *velit,* **34,** 2.

decima legione. Caesar's favourite legion: see II. **21,** 1. It was already in Gaul when Caesar first came thither (**7,** 2). The oratorical skill of this speech is worth notice. Caesar appeals first to the reason of the men by showing the groundlessness of their fear; then to their pride in their reputation as soldiers of Rome; to the confidence in himself which his career ought to inspire; and lastly, by threatening to march with only one legion he touches their sense of honour, which would not let them abandon their general to certain destruction, and at the same time secures the loyalty of his best veterans of the tenth legion by so special a mark of trust in them.

praetoriam cohortem. See note on *Army,* § 4.

Huic legioni—confidebat. *Confido* in Caesar generally is followed by a *dative* of *a person* trusted to, an *ablative* of *a thing* trusted in. *E.g. confidere natura loci,* III. **9,** 3.

41.

1. **cupiditas belli gerendi.** [§ 132.]

innata est. "Sprang up in them."

princeps gratias egit. "Was the first to thank."

2. **per tribunos.** See note on **3**, 6; note on *Army*, § 5 (*d*).

quod—fecisset. Subjunctive in *oratio obliqua*, as being part of what they said. [§ 151.] "They thanked him for having formed."

confirmavit. "Affirmed."

3. **egerunt cum.** "Conferred with." The officers were to be spokesmen for them with Caesar.

primorum ordinum centuriones. See note on *Army*, § 5 (*e*). Cp. **40**, 1.

satisfacerent. "Make satisfaction," "apologize."

summa belli. "General conduct of the war." Cp. II. **4**, 7; and *summa imperii*, II. **23**, 4.

4. **aliis.** Here in the sense of *ceteris*, as is not infrequent. Notice the idiom, "in whom he placed most trust of the rest;" like *πόλεμον ἀξιολογώτατον τῶν προγεγενημένων* (THUCYD. I. 1), "the most noticeable of all previous wars." In English we should say "more trust than in the rest," though Milton has imitated this usage in "fairest of all her daughters, Eve."

ei. Dative after *fidem habere* = *confido*.

ut—duceret. Depends on *exquisito*, the *ut* being consecutive. "He asked the route of D., with the result that he led," etc.

milium. Depends on *circuitu*. *Quinquaginta* is genitive after *amplius*, *quam* being omitted [N. S. V. *K*. 2, p. 138]. See on **38**, 5.

locis apertis. [§ 121.] This gives the reason of the circuitous march, *i.e.* to avoid the difficulties of the direct road to the Rhine down the valley of the Doubs, by making a circuit which would skirt the north end of the Jura range, probably by way of Vesoul and Belfort. See *Map*, p. 20.

5. **intermitteret.** See notes on **26**, 6; **38**, 5.

exploratoribus. See note on *Army*, § 4.

milibus passuum. See note on **22**, 5. Napoleon places Caesar's camp at Cernay, a town of Upper Alsace, at the foot of the Vosges; and that of Ariovistus near Colmar, lying northeast of Cernay. Between them is the plain of Cernay, watered

by the Ill, a tributary of the Rhine, and its own tributary the Thur. See *Map*, p. 45.

42.

1. quod. "Whereas." See on 13, 4.

postulasset. [§ 151.] The subject (Caesar) is omitted.

per se fieri licere. "Could be done as far as he was concerned."

facere posse. "That he can do it:" the subject being the same as that of *existimare*, is not repeated.

2. ad sanitatem. "To his senses."

denegasset. [§ 151]. Subjunctive, as being part of Caesar's thought.

ultro. "Unasked." The word is used in its original meaning, "to a place beyond," in section 4: thence comes its secondary meaning of going *beyond* what is required, *i.e.* doing a thing *voluntarily*.

3. pro. "In view of," or "in return for."

fore uti desisteret. See note on *Reported Speech*, III. *note* (1).

4. colloquio. [§ 108.]

ultro citroque. "Thither and hither;" "to and fro" between the two generals.

vereri—ne. [App. II., IV. *A*. II. 2 (1, *a*), p. 162.]

veniret. See note on *Reported Speech*, II. (*c*).

alia ratione. [§ 114.]

5. causa. "Pretext," as in 39, 3. Caesar did not wish to afford A. any pretext for throwing up the project of a conference.

Gallorum equitatui. Caesar had no Roman cavalry. See 15, 1.

equitibus. [§ 106 (3).]

eo. The adverb used for the fuller expression *in eos*, as in 51, 3.

legionarios milites. See note on *Army*, § 2.

cui confidebat. See on 40, 15.

si quid opus facto. See note on 34, 2.

6. non irridicule. "Not without humour," "humorously." An instance of the figure called *litŏtes*, in which an affirmation is made in the form of a denial of the opposite. Cp.

III. 14, 5, *falces non absimili forma muralium falcium.* So "*illaudati Busiridis aras*" (VIRG. *G.* III. 5).

cohortis praetoriae. See 40, 15.

ad equum rescribere. The joke lay in the double meaning of this phrase: (1) "to enrol afresh amongst the cavalry;" (2) "to enter in the class of the *knights.*"

The *equites* were originally the cavalry soldiers of the Roman citizen-army. According to the arrangement attributed to Servius Tullius they formed the highest class in the state after the senators. Some received their horses at the public cost (hence the phrase *rescribere ad equum*, "to enrol for a horse"); some served on horses of their own. But by a law of C. Gracchus all persons possessing the requisite property-qualification were enrolled in the *ordo equestris* irrespective of service in the army; so that from this date (B.C. 123) the name *equites* is applied in two distinct senses, military and civil; and the Equestrian order became the great middle class in Roman society, in which most of the merchants, financiers, etc., were found.

43.

1. **satis grandis.** "Of a moderate size." *Satis* means "up to the average;" so in French "assez grand" in exactly the same way (*assez* = *ad satis*).

aequo spatio aberat. See note on 22, 5; and cp. *passibus ducentis*, and *pari intervallo*, just below, section 2.

3. **ut ex equis—colloquerentur.** "That they should converse on horseback." So *ex equo pugnare.* The *ex* expresses the place from which the action, fighting or talking, comes. See on 4, 1, *ex vinclis dicere.*

4. **initio.** Ablative of place without preposition. Other phrases in which the omission is allowable are given in [N. S. V. *G.* 1, p. 137].

quod—appellatus esset, etc. These *quod* clauses explain what the *beneficia* were. Cp. 35, 2. For the subjunctive [§ 151].

quod—quod. For the repetition of a word instead of conjunctions (*anaphora*), cp. 14, 2.

quam rem—contigisse—docebat. *Quam rem* is subject of *contigisse*, *quam* being equivalent to *et eam.* Cp. 40, 6, *ex quo judicari posse;* and note on *Reported Speech*, II. (*d*), *note* (1).

paucis hominum. [§ 130.]

5. **aditum.** In law meant right of way to one's own field through another's. So here generally "right of access."

sua. See note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*d*).

6. **ipsis.** For *sibi ipsis*, in slight antithesis to *Aeduis*. See on 1, 1.

necessitudinis. "Alliance," whether of blood or friendship. So the adjective *necessarii* (ἀναγκαῖοι) = kinsmen.

intercederent. "Existed between."

7. **senatusconsulta.** The technical expression for decrees of the senate, as distinct from a vote of the popular assembly, *plebiscitum*.

ut. "How."

omni tempore. = *Semper*. See note on 11, 3.

principatum. "Leadership." But see on 31, 4.

nostram. *I.e. Romanorum*. See note on *Reported Speech*, IV.

8. **sui nihil.** [§ 131.] See note on *Se and Suus*, I. (*b*).

velit. Present tense in a general statement. See on 14, 4.

iis. Dative [§ 106 (3).].

quis—posset? For *oratio recta, quis—possit?* See on 40, 3, *cur—judicaret?*

9. **in mandatis.** "By way of instructions," not "amongst their instructions;" for these were all he gave. See 35, 3.

redderet. See note on *Reported Speech*, II. (*c*).

at. "At any rate." For this use of *at* in the apodosis [N. S., p. 164, *note*] of a conditional sentence, cp. Cic. *Phil.* II. 44: "*Quod si se ipsos—e conspectu nostro abstulerant, at exemplum facti reliquerunt.*"

44.

4. **ipsis.** Sc. *Gallis*. It may be translated "by their own act," *ipse* often having the force of *ultro*. Cp. Virg. *Ecl.* IV. 21: "*Ipsae lacte domum referent distenta capellae ubera.*"

ipsorum voluntate. See note on 7, 3. The Gauls state the facts differently in 31, 10-13.

5. **jure belli.** [§ 118.]

consuerint. A perfect-present (like *novi*) used of a general truth. See on 14, 4. But in all the first part of this reported

speech (sections 2-14), and again in sections 19-21, Caesar uses the original tenses of the speaker. See note on *Reported Speech*, III. *note* (4).

9. **decertare.** "Fight it out." So *debellare*, "to subdue utterly." The sense of the *de* is "to the end," "down to the dregs."

10. **ornamento, etc.** [§ 108.]

detrimento. "Loss" or "injury." Lit. the loss of wear and tear (*detero*).

id. Sc. *ut amicus esset*, not directly referring to *amicitiam*.

11. **per.** See note on **3,** 6.

remittatur. "Slackened," neglected." For future of *oratio recta*, see note on *Reported Speech*, III. *note* (2).

12. **Quod—traducat.** "As for his bringing over." See on **13,** 4.

causa. "For the sake of;" lit. "on the ground or excuse that." [§ 113.] See note on **7,** 3.

13. **bellum—defenderit.** The verb is used in its original sense of "strike down from," with the thing warded off as direct object; of defensive, not offensive, war. The derived sense, "to protect," is more common with accusative of the thing protected.

14. **Galliae provinciae.** See on **30,** 2.

fines egressum. See note on **12,** 2, *flumen traduxisse.*

15. **sibi.** Referring to the subject of its own verb (*vellet*): *suas* to the subject of the main verb of the *oratio obliqua*. See note on *Se and Suus*, I. (*a*), and II. (*b*).

vellet—veniret. See note on *Reported Speech*, II. (*b*); and notice the sudden change—apparently for change's sake—to the historical tenses. See *ibid.* III. *note* (4).

nostram. See note on *Reported Speech*, IV.

16. **ipsi.** For *sibi ipsi*, in antithesis to *nos*, see on **1,** 1.

17. **diceret.** *Sc.* Caesar, by an unmarked change of subject, the sense being unmistakable.

imperitum rerum. [§ 132.]

ut non. Consecutive after *tam*. [App. II., IV. *B*. I. (1), p. 162.]

bello Allobr. proximo. For the ablative, see on **13,** 2, *bello Cassiano*. For the historical reference see **6,** 1.

his contentionibus. "These latter disputes."

secum. See note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*b*).

18. **habeat.** The return to the primary tenses is perhaps for the sake of keeping the sense of *habeat* clear, as being a *present-imperfect*, *i.e.* denoting an incompleted action in the present, "is keeping." The imperfect in *oratio obliqua* corresponds to the perfect (aorist) as well as the present and past-imperfect of *oratio recta.* See note on *Reported Speech*, III. *note* (4).

19. **decedat.** For *future* of *oratio recta*, III. *note* (2).

20. **multis sese nobilibus, etc.** We have no evidence to show whether Ariovistus here spoke truth or an empty boast. But the violence of party spirit at Rome was so excessive, that the statement is not in itself improbable.

21. **per—nuntios.** See on 3, 6.

posset. If this be the right reading, it should represent *possit* of *oratio recta*, and *eorum quorum* should mean "people of a class whose favour," etc. [§ 150]; but this seems unnatural, as it would make *eorum* refer to different persons from *ipsis.* It seems more natural to take *quorum* as exactly equivalent to *et eorum*, in which case we should expect *posse*, and the correction of *posset* into *posse* is very easy, as Mr. Roby has suggested. See note on *Reported Speech*, II. *note* (1).

22. **discessisset.** The change to historic sequence is very abrupt, since the difference in the meaning of the tenses between *interfecerit* and *discessisset* is very slight, if any. Perhaps the former puts a merely supposed case, the latter a definite proposal; *i.e.* "Supposing I were to kill you," compared with "If you will go away," and so corresponding respectively to εἰ with the optative and ἐὰν with the subjunctive in Greek.

quaecumque bella, etc. Ariovistus promises Caesar that if he will withdraw into the Province, he himself will undertake for him any fighting (against the Gauls) which might be necessary for its protection.

45.

1. **in eam sententiam.** Explained by (1) *quare—posset;* (2) *neque—pati, neque judicare;* "to show why he could not—and that," etc.

quare—posset. [§ 149.]

2. **quibus—ignovisset.** [§ 107.]

in provinciam redegisset. Supply an object (*quos*) from the *quibus* above; the dative is again required as remoter object [§ 106 (1)] after *imposuisset.* "Had reduced to the condition of a province," *i.e.* of subjects of Rome.

3. **Quodsi—voluisset.** An answer to Ariovistus' claim of priority in Gaul, section 14 of the preceding chapter. The Romans had conquered two Gallic tribes in B.C. 121, and so had had the right of war to annex them; but they had judged it best to leave the Gauls free, and therefore opposed any attack on their liberty by others.

antiquissimum quodque tempus. "The claim of priority" which Ariovistus had made. See **44,** 14.

suis legibus. See note on *Se and Suus,* I. (*b*).

46.

1. **Dum—geruntur.** [§ 153 (2).]

propius tumulum. See note on **1,** 3, *proximi Germanis.*

2. **facit—recepit.** The present expresses the abruptness of his breaking off from the conference.

ne quod—telum. *Quod* is here an indefinite *adjective* after *ne,* distinct from the indefinite *pronoun quid.*

3. **etsi—videbat.** [§ 152, III. (2).]

committendum. "Occasion ought to be given."

per fidem—circumventos. "Entrapped through their trust in his promise."

4. **elatum.** "Spread abroad."

qua—interdixisset. [§ 149.]

omni Gallia. Ablative after a verb of prohibiting. [§ 123.]

Romanis. [§ 106, *a.*]

diremisset. *Dirimo* = *disimo,* compounded from *dis* and *emo* (to take). Cp. *diribitor* from *dis-habeo,* and *sero* = *seso.* See on **3,** 1.

47.

1. **Biduo.** [§ 120.]

inter eos. For *nos* of *oratio recta,* and therefore deviating from the strict rule which requires *se.* See on **5,** 3. But the reason is no doubt that the *se* plural would have been awkward after the *se* singular (= *Ariovistum*) before.

coeptae essent. The deponent perfect of *coepi* is generally used with passive infinitives. Cp. II. 6, 2.

uti—constitueret. Depends on the verb of asking, to be understood with *legatos mittit.* "He sends ambassadors *to say*" (with infinitive, *se velle*),—and "*to ask* (*uti*)."

colloquio. [§ 108.]

suis. *I.e.* Caesar's. *Se, i.e.* Ariovistus. See note on *Se and Suus*, I. (*a*), and II. (*a*).

2. **causa.** *I.e. sufficient* reason.

pridie ejus diei. See 16, 1. *Pridie* may be qualified like any other noun by a genitive. [§ 126.]

retineri—quin. [App. II., IV. *C.* V., note 2 (2), p. 167.

3. **Legatum.** An "envoy" here; not a *legatus* in the military sense. The bracketed *legatis* in section 1 is probably an interpolation due to misapprehension of the meaning of *legatum* here.

e suis. *I.e.* a Roman.

feris. "Uncivilized" (see on 31, 5), and therefore without respect for the rules of civilized warfare, the sanctity of a flag of truce, etc.

4. **summa virtute.** [§ 115.]

humanitate. "Accomplishments." See on 1, 3.

civitate. The Roman franchise; lit. "the being a *civis.*" The *civitas* conferred the political privileges of voting in the assemblies and at elections, and of candidature for public office; and the private rights of intermarriage and trading with Romans, inheriting and holding property according to Roman law, and the like. The *cives* also were (at this time) exempt from direct taxation.

linguae Gallicae. *I.e.* Celtic.

qua multa—utebatur. "Which A. used largely." Adjectives are often found in Latin where English would use an adverb qualifying the verb. Cp. "*in agmine multus adesse*" (SALL. *Jug.* 96), where *multus* = *saepe*; "*Philotimus nullus venit*" (CIC. *Att.* II. 24), where *nullus* = *non.*

longinqua. Ordinarily used of distance, here of time. See on 40, 14, for the converse use of *longus* = *longinquus.*

in eo. "In his case." Cp. "*Talis in hoste fuit Priamo*" (VIRG. *Aen.* II. 541).

5. **auxiliorum.** See note on *Army*, § 3.

castra majora. *I.e.* the first camp, north of Ariovistus. See *Map*, p. 45.

50.

1. **instituto suo.** [§ 113.] See on **7**, 3, *ejus voluntate.*

2. **meridiem.** Probably for *medidiem*, from *medius* and *dies;* for change of *d* to *r*, cp. *arbiter* from *ad-beto*, *arcesso* for *ad-cesso.* See note on **31**, 4.

quae—oppugnaret. [§ 150.]

3. **vesperum.** *Vesper* is a word of two declensions, with genitives *vesperis* and *vesperi.* In classical prose the ablatives *vesperi*, *vespere* (the former perhaps a locative), and accusative *vesperum*, are most common.

Solis occasu. [§ 120.] See on **13**, 2, *bello Cassiano.*

4. **proelio.** [§ 113.] Without epithet, being loosely regarded as an instrument. See on **7**, 3, *ejus voluntate.*

decertaret. [§ 149.]

quod. "Whereas," with subjunctive, because in *oratio obliqua* [§ 151].

ea—ut. See on **5**, 1.

sortibus. Tacitus describes this mode of divination (*Germ.* 10). Slips cut from a fruit-tree, and inscribed with mystic words, were shaken together on a white cloth, and the omen was drawn from the words on the first three taken up haphazard by the priest, or (according to Tacitus) the *paterfamiliae.* The German word *Loos* (a lot), according to Kraner, means etymologically a twig broken from the tree: so, perhaps, *κλῆρος* in Greek, from *κλάω* (break), compared with *κλάδος*, a branch.

utrum—necne. [N. S. IX. *B. b*, p. 142.]

esset. [§ 149.]

5. **non esse fas.** *Fas* here is in its proper religious sense = "the will of the gods," as distinct from *jus*, human law. Cp. "*Fas et jura sinunt*" (Virg. *Georg.* I. 269).

51.

1. **alarios**=*auxilia* here. See note on *Army*, § 3.

minus valebat. "He was less strong than he wished" "was weak." See note on **48**, 6, *si quid erat durius.*

multitudine militum. [§ 113.]

pro. "In proportion to."

ad speciem. "To make a show of strength."

triplici instructa acie. See note on *Army*, § 7.

2. **necessario.** Adverb, originally ablative absolute of adjective, "it being necessary." See note on *improviso*, **13**, 4.

generatim. "According to tribes."

paribus intervallis. [§ 113.]

redis—carris. See note on **3**, 1.

3. **Eo.** For *in ea.* See on **42**, 5.

passis manibus. "Outstretched hands."

ne se traderent. See note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*a*).

52.

1. **singulis—singulos.** See note on **48**, 5.

legatos—quaestorem. See note on *Army*, § 5 (*b*) and (*c*).

2. **a dextro cornu.** See on **1**, 4, *ab Sequanis.*

eam partem. *I.e.* the opposite (left) wing of the enemy.

proelium commisit. *I.e.* gave the signal for battle, general.

3. **itaque.** For *et ita*, qualifying *repente.*

ut—non daretur. Consecutive *ut* after *ita.* [N. S. IX. *A.* p. 141.]

pila conjiciendi. The gerund is seldom used with a direct object except in its genitive case: in the other cases the gerundive attraction is employed, *e.g.* not *pila conjiciendo*, but *pilis conjiciendis.* [§ 143.]

4. **comminus.** "Hand to hand;" from *cum* (*con*) and *manus.* Cp. *eminus*, "from a distance."

phalange facta. "Adopting the phalanx formation;" but section 5, compared with **51**, 2, shews that each tribe formed a separate phalanx. See note on *phalanx*, **24**, 3.

5. **complures nostri milites.** "Soldiers of ours in many instances," not "many of our soldiers," which would be expressed by the partitive genitive. *Complures* is thus equivalent to an adverb (*identidem*), like *multa*, in **47**, 4; see note there.

qui—insilirent. [§ 150.]

et desuper vulnerarent. These words Kraner considers to be the addition of a reader, who, confusing the phalanx order with that of the *testudo* (see note on *Army*, § 9), supposed that

the soldiers leapt on the roof of shields, and tearing them up, struck at the men beneath. But the shields formed a wall, not a roof.

6. **a sinistro cornu.** *I. e.* their own left. See section 2.

premebant. Notice the change of number through the influence of the preceding words *multitudine suorum.*

adulescens. Added to distinguish this Crassus from his father the triumvir.

quod expeditior erat. "Because he was less engaged," *i.e.* not entangled in the mêlée, and therefore better able to discern the need of reinforcing the left wing.

inter aciem. Here *acies* means the actual fighting; immediately below it means a division of the army.

subsidio. [§ 108.]

53.

1. **milia passuum quinque.** [N. S. IX. *G. c.* (2), p. 146.] Napoleon and other editors read *quinquaginta*, chiefly on the strength of a passage in Plutarch's *Life of Caesar*, which says that the flight extended over three hundred to four hundred *stadia*, *i.e.* forty to fifty miles. But it is safer to retain *quinque*, which is the reading of all the MSS., and perhaps better satisfies the geographical conditions; since, if we adopt the reading *quinquaginta*, we must assume that the Germans did not make directly for the Rhine. Napoleon supposes that they fled down the banks of the Ill, meeting the Rhine near Rheinau.

2. **viribus.** Ablative. See on 40, 15, *huic confidebat.*

confisi. Deponent participle [§ 81 (8), p. 67].

repperunt. The doubling of the *p* in the perfect perhaps represents the lost reduplication retained in the simple verb *pario peperi.* Cp. *rettuli, reppuli.*

3. **equitatu.** See note on 8, 1, *ea legione.*

4. **domo.** [§ 121, *C. a.*] *Duxerat*, "had brought with him;" but below = "had married."

5. **Procillus.** See 47, 4.

trinis catenis. *Trinis* instead of *tribus*, because *catenae* is generally used in the plural, like our English word "fetters." [N. E. IV. *A.* p. 128.]

6. **Quae quidem res.** The *quidem* adds emphasis to the *quae.* "And it was this circumstance that——"

provinciae Galliae. [§ 130.] For the apposition cp. **30**, 2.

hospitem. See the note on the tie of *hospitium* between states, **31**, 7. Similarly between a Roman and a foreigner, a compact of private *hospitium* gave each a claim on the other's hospitality, protection, and good offices. The bond was consecrated by religious ceremony, and often hereditary.

gratulatione. "Occasion of congratulation."

7. **se praesente de se.** Notice the repetition of the pronoun in two different constructions, instead of the more terse but less emphatic *de se praesente.*

consultum. Impersonal.

sortibus. See on **50**, 4.

8. **eum.** Sc. *Caesarem.* Cp. II. **14**, 1.

54.

1. **ripas.** See note on **37**, 3.

quos insecuti—ex iis. See note on **12**, 3.

proximi Rhenum. See note on **1**, 3.

2. **una aestate.** "Time within which." [§ 120.]

hiberna. See note on *Army*, § 10.

in hiberna in Sequanos. It is the Latin idiom to repeat the preposition or case implying "motion towards" in expressions like this. In English we use it only once, *i.e.* "into winter quarters amongst the S." Cp. **31**, 9.

3. **conventus.** A Roman province was divided, for convenience of administering justice, into districts, to the chief town of each of which the proconsul or propraetor went from time to time to preside over the assize. To hold such an assize was styled *agere conventus.* Caesar generally used the winter months for this purpose; but his chief motive in going now into his Cisalpine province was probably that he might be nearer Rome, and so get better information of the political movements there.

BOOK II.

Campaign against the Belgae. B.C. 57.

Caesar, whilst still in Cisalpine Gaul, hears that the Belgae are intending to combine against the Romans: he enrols two new legions, and marches at the head of his army to their confines.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia, ita uti supra demonstravimus, crebri ad eum rumores afferebantur, litterisque item Labieni certior fiebat omnes Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus, contra populum Romanum conjurare obsidesque inter se dare. Conjurandi has esse causas: primum quod vererentur, 2 ne omni pacata Gallia ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur; deinde, quod ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitarentur, 3 partim qui, ut Germanos diutius in Gallia versari noluerant, ita populi Romani exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere in Gallia moleste ferebant, partim qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis imperiis studebant, ab 4 nonnullis etiam, quod in Gallia a potentioribus atque iis, qui ad conducendos homines facultates habebant, volgo regna occupabantur, qui minus facile eam rem imperio nostro consequi poterant.

2. His nuntiis litterisque commotus Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas conscripsit et inita aestate, in interiorem Galliam qui deduceret, Quintum Pedium legatum misit. Ipse, cum primum pabuli copia 2 esse inciperet, ad exercitum venit. Dat negotium 3 Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis erant,

uti ea, quae apud eos gerantur, cognoscant seque de his
4 rebus certiorem faciant. Hi constanter omnes nuntiaverunt manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum con-
5 duci. Tum vero dubitandum non existimavit, quin
6 ad eos proficisceretur. Re frumentaria comparata castra movet diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

The Remi send ambassadors to Caesar offering their alliance: they give an account of the strength and composition of the Belgic confederacy.

3. Eo cum de improviso celeriusque omni opinione venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum legatos Iccium et Andecumborium, primos civitatis,
2 miserunt, qui dicerent se suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittere, neque cum Belgis reliquis consensisse neque contra populum Romanum con-
3 jurasse, paratosque esse et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus juvare;
4 reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse, Germanosque, qui
5 cis Rhenum incolant, sese cum his conjunxisse, tantumque esse eorum omnium furorem, ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eodem jure et isdem legibus utantur, unum imperium unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant, deterrere potuerint, quin cum his consentirent.

4. Cum ab his quaereret, quae civitates quantaeque in armis essent et quid in bello possent, sic reperiebat: plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis Rhenumque antiquitus traductos propter loci fertilitatem ibi con-
2 sedisse Gallosque, qui ea loca incolerent, expulisse solosque esse, qui patrum nostrorum memoria omni Gallia vexata Teutonos Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingredi pro-
3 hibuerint; qua ex re fieri, uti earum rerum memoria magnam sibi auctoritatem magnosque spiritus in re militari
4 sumerent. De numero eorum omnia se habere explorata Remi dicebant, propterea quod propinquitatibus affinitatibusque conjuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem in

communi Belgarum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognoverint. Plurimum inter eos Bellovacos et virtute 5 et auctoritate et hominum numero valere: hos posse conficere armata milia centum; pollicitos ex eo numero electa sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulare. Suessiones suos esse finitimos; fines latissimos feracis- 6 simosque agros possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem nostra 7 etiam memoria Divitiacum, totius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit: nunc esse regem Galbam: ad hunc propter justitiam prudentiamque summam totius belli omnium voluntate deferri; oppida habere numero XII, polliceri milia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervios, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habeantur 8 longissimeque absint; quindecim milia Atrebates, 9 Ambianos decem milia, Morinos XXV milia, Menapios VII milia, Caletos X milia, Veliocasses et Viromanduos totidem, Aduatucos decem et novem milia; Condrusos, 10 Eburones, Caeroesos, Paemanos, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad XL milia.

Caesar induces his allies the Aedui to make a diversion by threatening the territory of the Bellovaci, whilst he himself marches to meet the confederate army near Bibrax, a town of the Remi.

5. Caesar Remos cohortatus liberaliterque oratione prosecutus omnem senatum ad se convenire principumque liberos obsides ad se adduci jussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Divitiacum 2 Aeduum magnopere cohortatus docet, quanto opere rei publicae communisque salutis intersit manus hostium distineri, ne cum tanta multitudine uno tempore confligendum sit. Id fieri posse, si suas copias Aedui in 3 fines Bellovacorum introduxerint et eorum agros populari coeperint. His mandatis eum ab se dimittit. Post- 4 quam omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas ad se venire vidit neque jam longe abesse ab iis, quos miserat, exploratoribus et ab Remis cognovit, flumen

Axonam, quod est in extremis Remorum finibus, exerci-
5 tum traducere maturavit, atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat et post eum quae essent, tuta ab hostibus reddebat et, commeatus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus ut sine
6 periculo ad eum portari possent, efficiebat. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit et in altera parte fluminis Q. Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum XII vallo fossaque duodeviginti pedum munire jubet.

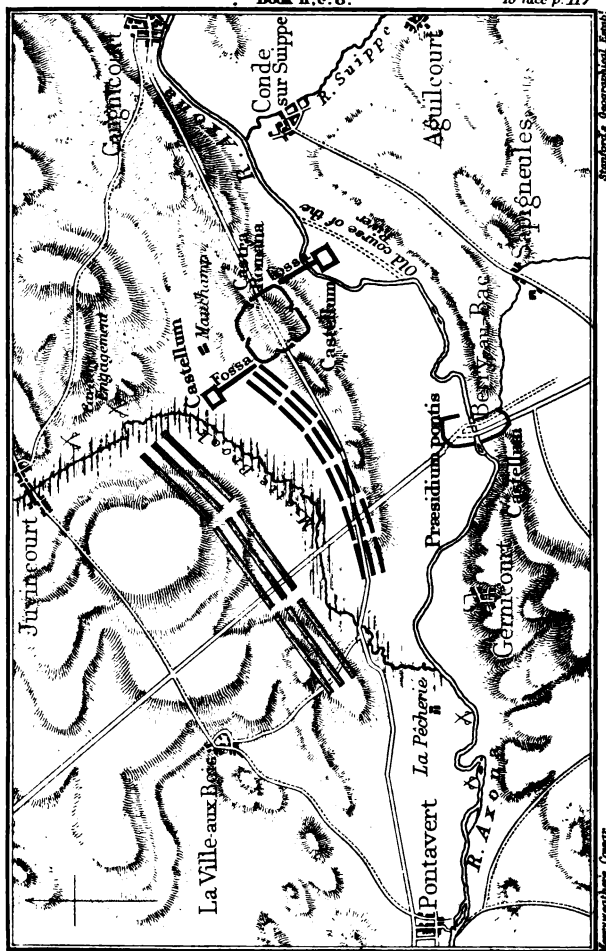
The Belgae assail Bibrax; but abandon the siege on the arrival of reinforcements from Caesar, and march towards his camp on the Axona.

6. Ab his castris oppidum Remorum nomine Bibrax aberat milia passuum octo. Id ex itinere magno impetu Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegre eo die sustentatum
2 est, Gallorum eadem atque Belgarum oppugnatio est haec. Ubi circumjecta multitudine hominum totis moenibus undique in murum lapides jaci coepti sunt murusque defensoribus nudatus est, testudine facta
3 [portas] succedunt murumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiebat. Nam cum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conjicerent, in muro consistendi potestas erat nulli.
4 Cum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius Remus, summa nobilitate et gratia inter suos, qui tum oppido praefuerat, unus ex iis, qui legati de pace ad Caesarem venerant, nuntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse.

7. Eo de media nocte Caesar isdem ducibus usus, qui nuntii ab Iccio venerant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios et funditores Baleares subsidio oppidanis mittit;
2 quorum adventu et Remis cum spe defensionis studium propugnandi accessit, et hostibus eadem de causa spes
3 potiundi oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morati agrosque Remorum depopulati omnibus vicis aedificiisque, quos adire potuerant, incensis ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contenderunt et ab mili-

BATTLE ON THE AXONA

Book II, c. 8.

To face p. 117

Romans — Roman Miles — Belgae

Rivingtons: London, Oxford & Cambridge.

bus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt; quae 4 castra, ut fumo atque ignibus significabatur, amplius milibus passuum octo in latitudinem patebant.

Caesar at first tries his troops against the enemy in cavalry skirmishes, and then chooses and prepares his ground for a pitched battle.

8. Caesar primo et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opinionem virtutis proelio supersedere statuit; cotidie tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis 2 virtute posset et quid nostri auderent, periclitabatur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiores intellexit, loco pro cas- 3 tris ad aciem instruendam natura opportuno atque idoneo, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex planicie editus tantum adversus in latitudinem patebat, quantum loci acies instructa occupare poterat, atque ex utraque parte lateris dejectus habebat et in fronte leniter fastigatus paulatim ad planiciem redibat, ab utroque latere ejus collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum CD et ad extremas fossas castella constituit 4 ibique tormenta collocavit, ne, cum aciem instruxisset, hostes, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes suos circumvenire possent. Hoc facto dua- 5 bus legionibus, quas proxime conscripserat, in castris relictis, ut, si quo opus esset, subsidio duci possent, reliquas sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit.

The Belgae attempt to capture the bridge over the river in Caesar's rear, and so cut his line of communications. Being unsuccessful, they break up their army and return to their homes, but suffer heavy loss in the retreat from the pursuit of Caesar's cavalry.

9. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant. Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent, hostes exspectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos aggrederentur, parati in armis erant. Interim proelio equestri inter duas acies contendeba'

Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, secundiore equitum proelio nostris Caesar suos in castra reduxit.
3 Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contende-
4 runt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suarum copiarum traducere conati sunt eo consilio, ut, si possent, castellum, cui praeerat Quintus Titurius legatus, expugnarent pontemque interscinderent; si minus potuissent, agros Remorum popularentur, qui magno nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatuque nostros prohiberent.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titurio omnem equitatum et levis armaturae Numidas, funditores sagittarios-
2 que pontem traducit atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi magnum eorum numerum occiderunt:
3 per eorum corpora reliquos audacissime transire conantes multitudine telorum reppulerunt; primos, qui trans-
4 ierant, equitatu circumventos interfecerunt. Hostes ubi et de expugnando oppido et de flumine transeundo spem se fefellisse intellexerunt neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi pugnandi causa viderunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere coepit, concilio convocato constituerunt optimum esse, domum suam quemque reverti et, quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, ut potius in suis quam in alienis finibus decertarent et
5 domesticis copiis rei frumentariae uterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiacum atque Aeduos finibus Bellovacorum appropinquare cognoverant. His persuaderi, ut diutius morarentur neque suis auxilium ferrent, non poterat.

11. Ea re constituta secunda vigilia magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris egressi nullo certo ordine neque imperio, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt, ut consimilis
2 fugae profectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per speculatores cognita insidias veritus, quod, qua de causa

discederent, nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Prima luce confirmata re ab 3 exploratoribus omnem equitatum, qui novissimum agmen moraretur, praemisit. His Quintum Pedium et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praefecit. Titum Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi jussit. Hi 4 novissimos adorti et multa milia passuum prosecuti magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt, cum ab extremo agmine, ad quos ventum erat, consisterent fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent, priores, quod abesse a periculo viderentur neque 5 ulla necessitate neque imperio continerentur, exaudito clamore perturbatis ordinibus omnes in fuga sibi praesidium ponerent. Ita sine ullo periculo tantam eorum 6 multitudinem nostri interfecerunt, quantum fuit diei spatium, sub occasumque solis destiterunt seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

Caesar attacks the tribes of the late confederacy successively. The Suessiones, Bellovaci, and Ambiani surrender with little difficulty. The reputation of the Nervii makes a more formidable resistance probable.

12. Postridie ejus diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere [confecto] ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex 2 itinere oppugnare conatus, quod vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem paucis defendentibus expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis vineas agere quaeque ad oppugnandum 3 usui erant comparare coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga 4 Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere jacto 5 turribusque constitutis magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti legatos ad Caesarem de deditione mittunt et, petentibus Remis, ut conservarentur, impetrant.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitati

ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis in deditionem Suessiones accepit exercitumque in Bellovacos ducit. Qui cum se suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum exercitu circiter milia passuum quinque abesset, omnes majores natu ex oppido egressi manus ad Caesarem tendere et voce significare coeperunt, sese in ejus fidem ac potestatem venire neque contra 3 populum Romanum armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi poneret, pueri mulieresque ex muro passis manibus suo more pacem ab Romanis petierunt.

14. Pro his Divitiacus (nam post discessum Belgarum dimissis Aeduorum copiis ad eum reverterat) facit 2 verba: Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia 3 civitatis Aeduae fuisse: impulsos a suis principibus, qui dicerent Aeduos ab Caesare in servitutem redactos omnes indignitates contumeliasque perferre, et ab Aeduis defecisse et populo Romano bellum intulisse. 4 Qui ejus consilii principes fuissent, quod intellegerent, quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam 5 profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacos, sed etiam pro his Aeduos, ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos 6 utatur. Quod si fecerit, Aeduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificaturum; quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint.

15. Caesar honoris Divitiaci atque Aeduorum causa sese eos in fidem recepturum et conservaturum dixit; quod erat civitas magna inter Belgas auctoritate atque hominum multitudine praestabat, sexcentos obsides 2 poposcit. His traditis omnibusque armis ex oppido collatis ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui se 3 suaque omnia sine mora dediderunt. Eorum fines Nervii attingebant; quorum de natura moribusque Caesar 4 cum quaereret, sic reperiebat: Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus; nihil pati vini reliquarumque rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod iis rebus relanguescere animos [eorum] et remitti virtutem existimarent:

esse homines feros magnaeque virtutis, increpitare atque 5
incusare reliquos Belgas, qui se populo Romano dedidissent patriamque virtutem projecissent: confirmare 6
sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam condicionem pacis accepturos.

News is brought to Caesar that the Nervii, with their allies the Atrebates and Viromandui, are in force on the river Sabis.

16. Cum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveniebat ex captivis Sabim flumen ab castris suis non amplius milia passuum x abesse: trans id flumen 2
omnes Nervios consedisse adventumque ibi Romanorum exspectare una cum Atrebatis et Viromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his utrisque persuaserant, uti eandem belli 3
fortunam experirentur); exspectari etiam ab his Adua- 4
tucorum copias atque esse in itinere: mulieres quique 5
per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur in eum locum conjecisse, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

Some Gauls of the Belgic tribes who had surrendered convey information of Caesar's march to the Nervii, who plan a surprise. The means employed by the Nervii to impede the advance of an invader.

17. His rebus cognitis exploratores centurionesque praemittit qui locum idoneum castris deligant. Cum 2
ex dediticiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesarem secuti una iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspecta nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt atque his demonstrarunt inter singulas legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercedere, neque esse quicquam negotii, cum prima legio in castra venisset reliquaeque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri; qua pulsa impedimentisque 3
direptis futurum, ut reliquae contra consistere non auderent. Adjuvabat etiam eorum consilium, qui rem 4
deferebant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitatu nihil

possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent copiis), quo facilius finitimorum equitatum, si praedandi causa ad eos venissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis crebrisque in latitudinem ramis enatis et rubis sentibusque interjectis effecerant, ut instar muri hae sepes munimenta praeberent, quo non modo non intrari,
5 sed ne perspici quidem posset. His rebus cum iter agminis nostri impediretur, non omittendum sibi consilium Nervii existimaverunt.

The van of the Roman army is attacked whilst fortifying a camp on the banks of the Sabis. The suddenness of the onset and rapid movements of the enemy prevent the Romans from forming in regular battle order.

18. Loci natura erat haec, quem locum nostri castris delegerant. Collis ab summo aequaliter declivis ad
2 flumen Sabim, quod supra nominavimus, vergebat. Ab eo flumine pari acclivitate collis nascebatur adversus huic et contrarius, passus circiter ducentos infimus apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris, ut non facile
3 introrsus perspici posset. Intra eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continebant; in aperto loco secundum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo circiter pedum trium.

19. Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequebatur omni-
2 bus copiis; sed ratio ordoque agminis aliter se habebat,
3 ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam quod hosti appropinquabat, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducebat; post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocarat; inde duae legiones, quae proxume conscriptae erant, totum agmen claudebant praesidioque
4 impedimentis erant. Equites nostri cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi cum hostium equitatu
5 proelium commiserunt. Cum se illi identidem in silvas ad suos reciperent ac rursus ex silva in nostros impetum facerent, neque nostri longius, quam quem ad finem porrecta loca aperta pertinebant, cedentes insequi au-

derent, interim legiones sex, quae primae venerant, opere dimenso castra munire coeperunt. Ubi prima impedi- 6 menta nostri exercitus ab iis, qui in silvis abditi latebant, visa sunt, quod tempus inter eos committendi proelii convenerat, ut intra silvas aciem ordinesque constituerant atque ipsi sese confirmaverant, subito omnibus copiis provolaverunt impetumque in nostros equites fecerunt. His facile pulsis ac proturbatis incredibili celeritate ad 7 flumen decurrerunt, ut paene uno tempore ad silvas et in flumine et jam in manibus nostris hostes viderentur. Eadem autem celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra 8 atque eos, qui in opere occupati erant, contenderunt.

20. Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum proponendum, quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurri oporteret, signum tuba dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, qui paulo longius aggeris petendi causa processerant arcessendi, acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum. Quarum rerum magnam 2 partem temporis brevitas et successus hostium impediebat. His difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, scientia atque 3 usus militum, quod superioribus proeliis exercitati, quid fieri oporteret, non minus commode ipsi sibi praescribere, quam ab aliis doceri poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere nisi munitis castris vetuerat. Hi propter propinquita- 4 tem et celeritatem hostium nihil jam Caesaris imperium exspectabant, sed per se quae videbantur administrabant.

21. Caesar necessariis rebus imperatis ad cohortandos milites, quam in partem fors obtulit, decucurrit et ad legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore 2 oratione cohortatus, quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent neu perturbarentur animo hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant, quam quo telum adigi posset, proelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem 3 item cohortandi causa profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam para

ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induendas scutisque
5 tegimenta detrudenda tempus defuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem casu devenit quaeque prima signa conspexit, ad haec constitit, ne in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret.

The battle resolves itself into a series of detached conflicts with varying results. The Atrebates and Viromandui are repulsed; but the Nervii carry the Roman camp and threaten to surround the seventh and twelfth legions.

22. Instructo exercitu, magis ut loci natura dejectusque collis et necessitas temporis, quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, cum diversis legionibus aliae alia in parte hostibus resisterent, sepibusque densissimis, ut ante demonstravimus, interjectis prospectus impediretur, neque certa subsidia collocari neque, quid in quaque parte opus esset, provideri neque ab uno omnia
2 imperia administrari poterant. Itaque in tanta rerum iniquitate fortunae quoque eventus varii sequebantur.

23. Legionis nonae et decimae milites, ut in sinistra parte acie constiterant, pilis emissis cursu ac lassitudine exanimatos vulneribusque confectos Atrebates (nam his ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen compulerunt et transire conantes insecuti gladiis magnam
2 partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsi transire flumen non dubitaverunt et in locum iniquum progressi rursus resistentes hostes redintegrato proelio in fugam
3 conjecerunt. Item alia in parte diversae duae legiones, undecima et octava, profligatis Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore, in ipsis fluminis ripis
4 proeliabantur. At totis fere a fronte et ab sinistra parte nudatis castris, cum in dextro cornu legio duodecima et non magno ab ea intervallo septima constitisset, omnes Nervii confertissimo agmine duce Boduognato, qui summam imperii tenebat, ad eum locum contende-
5 runt; quorum pars aperto latere legiones circumvenire, pars summum castrorum locum petere coepit.

BATTLE ON THE SABIS

Book II. c. 19.

To face p. 124

Rivingtons: London, Oxford & Cambridge.

24. Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque armaturae pedites, qui cum iis una fuerant, quos primo hostium impetu pulsos dixeram, cum se in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrebant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petebant, et calones, qui ab decumana porta ac 2 summo jugo collis nostros victores flumen transisse conspexerant, praedandi causa egressi, cum respexissent et hostes in nostris castris versari vidissent, praecipites fugae sese mandabant. Simul eorum, qui cum impe- 3 dimentis veniebant, clamor fremitusque oriebatur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti ferebantur. Quibus omnibus 4 rebus permoti equites Treveri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singularis, qui auxilii causa ab civitate ad Caesarem missi venerant, cum multitudine hostium castra compleri nostra, legiones premi et paene circumventas teneri, calones, equites, funditores, Numidas diversos dissipatosque in omnes partes fugere vidissent, desperatis nostris rebus domum contenderunt; Romanos 5 pulsos superatosque, castris impedimentisque eorum hostes potitos civitati renuntiaverunt.

Caesar's personal valour retrieves the fortune of the day. The arrival of the two legions who had formed the rearguard of the march completes the defeat of the Nervii, who, resisting obstinately, are almost utterly destroyed.

25. Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis signiferoque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo P. Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto, ut jam se sustinere non posset, reliquos esse tardiores et nonnullos ab novissimis deserto loco proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostis neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntes intermittere et ab utroque latere instare et rem esse in angusto vidit neque

ullum esse subsidium, quod submitti posset, scuto ab novissimis [uni] militi detracto, quod ipse eo sine scuto venerat, in primam aciem processit centurionibusque nominatim appellatis reliquos cohortatus milites signa inferre et manipulos laxare jussit, quo facilius gladiis 2 uti possent. Cujus adventu spe illata militibus ac redintegrato animo, cum pro se quisque in conspectu imperatoris etiam in extremis suis rebus operam navare cuperet paulum hostium impetus tardatus est.

26. Caesar cum septimam legionem, quae juxta constiterat, item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum monuit, ut paulatim sese legiones conjungerent et con- 2 versa signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto cum alius alii subsidium ferret, neque timerent, ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare 3 coeperunt. Interim milites legionum duarum, quae in novissimo agmine praesidio impedimentis fuerant, proelio nuntiato cursu incitato in summo colle ab 4 hostibus conspiciebantur, et T. Labienus castris hostium potitus et ex loco superiore, quae res in nostris castris gererentur, conspicatus decimam legionem sub- 5 sidio nostris misit. Qui cum ex equitum et calonum fuga, quo in loco res esset, quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt.

27. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio est facta, ut nostri etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubuissent, scutis innixi proelium redintegrarent; tum calones perterritos hostes conspicati etiam inermes armatis 2 occurrerunt, equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugae virtute delerent, omnibus in locis pugnarunt, quo se legionariis 3 militibus praeferrent. At hostes etiam in extrema spe salutis tantam virtutem praestiterunt, ut, cum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi jacentibus insisterent, atque 4 ex eorum corporibus pugnarent; his dejectis et coacervatis cadaveribus, qui superessent, ut ex tumulo tela in 5 nostros conjicerent et pila intercepta remitterent: ut non nequiquam tantae virtutis homines judicari deberet

ausos esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo redegerat.

The non-combatant population of the Nervii appeal to Caesar for mercy, which is granted.

28. Hoc proelio facto et prope ad internecionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto majores natu, quos una cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuaria ac paludes conjectos dixeramus, hac pugna nuntiata, cum victoribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tutum arbitrarentur, omnium, qui supererant, consensu legatos ad Caesarem miserunt seque ei dediderunt et in commemoranda civitatis calamitate ex sexcentis ad tres senatores, ex hominum milibus LX vix ad quingentos, qui arma ferre possent, sese redactos esse dixerunt. Quos Caesar, ut 2 in miseros ac supplices usus misericordia videretur, diligentissime conservavit suisque finibus atque oppidis uti jussit et finitimis imperavit, ut ab injuria et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.

The Aduatuci retire into a strongly fortified town, which is besieged by the Romans.

29. Aduatuci, de quibus supra scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis auxilio Nerviis venirent, hac pugna nuntiata ex itinere domum reverterunt; cunctis oppidis 2 castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppidum egregie natura munitum contulerunt. Quod cum ex 3 omnibus in circuitu partibus altissimas rupes despectusque haberet, una ex parte leniter acclivis aditus in latitudinem non amplius ducentorum pedum relinquebatur; quem locum duplici altissimo muro munierant: tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacutas trabes in muro collocabant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prog- 4 nati, qui, cum iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, iis impedimentis, quae secum agere ac portare non poterant, citra flumen Rhenum depositis custodiam ex suis ac praesidium sex milia hominum una relique-

5 runt. Hi post eorum obitum multos annos a finitimis exagitati, cum alias bellum inferrent, alias illatum defenderent, consensu eorum omnium pace facta hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt.

30. Ac primo adventu exercitus nostri crebras ex oppido excursiones faciebant parvulisque proeliis cum 2 nostris contendebant; postea vallo passuum in circuitu xv milium crebrisque castellis circummuniti oppido 3 sese continebant. Ubi vineis actis aggere exstructo turrim procul constitui viderunt, primum irridere ex muro atque increpitare vocibus, quod tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio instrueretur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim homines tantulae staturae (nam plerumque hominibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum suorum brevitas nostra contemptui est) tanti oneris turrim moturos sese confiderent?

Their offer to surrender is accepted on condition of their giving up all their arms. They agree, but treacherously keep back a part of them.

31. Ubi vero moveri et appropinquare moenibus viderunt, nova atque inusitata specie commoti legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui ad hunc modum 2 locuti: non existimare Romanos sine ope divina bellum gerere, qui tantae altitudinis machinationes tanta 3 celeritate promovere possent, se suaque omnia eorum 4 potestati permittere dixerunt. Unum petere ac deprecari: si forte pro sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, statuisset Aduatucos esse conser-5 vandos, ne se armis despoliaret. Sibi omnes fere finitimos esse inimicos ac suae virtuti invidere; a 6 quibus se defendere traditis armis non possent. Sibi praestare, si in eum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortunam a populo Romano pati, quam ab his per cruciatum interfici, inter quos dominari consuessent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Se magis consuetudine sua quam merito eorum civitatem conservaturum, si prius, quam murum aries attigisset, se dedidissent:

sed deditionis nullam esse condicionem nisi armis traditis. Se id, quod in Nerviis fecisset, facturum 2 finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam dediticiis populi Romani injuriam inferrent. Re nuntiata ad suos, 3 quae imperarentur, facere dixerunt. Armorum magna 4 multitudine de muro in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, jacta, sic ut prope summam muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adaequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertia, ut postea perspectum est, celata atque in oppido retenta portis patefactis eo die pace sunt usi.

A sudden sortie is attempted from the town. The Aduatuci, after hard fighting, are defeated, and sold with all their property.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque ex oppido exire jussit, ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus injuriam acciperent. Illi ante inito, ut intel- 2 lectum est, consilio, quod deditione facta nostros praesidia deducturos aut denique indiligentius servaturos crediderant, partim sumptis, quae retinuerant et celaverant, armis, partim scutis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intextis, quae subito, ut temporis exiguitas postulabat, pellibus induxerant, tertia vigilia, qua minime arduus ad nostras munitiones ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis repentino ex oppido eruptionem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, ignibus significa- 3 tione facta ex proximis castellis eo concursum est, pugnatumque ab hostibus ita acriter est, ut a viris 4 fortibus in extrema spe salutis iniquo loco contra eos, qui ex vallo turribusque tela jacerent, pugnari debuit, cum in una virtute omnis spes salutis consisteret. Occisis ad hominum milibus quattuor reliqui in oppidum 5 rejecti sunt. Postridie ejus diei refractis portis, cum 6 jam defenderet nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris sectionem ejus oppidi universam Caesar vendidit. Ab his, qui emerant, capitum numerus ad eum relatus 7 est milium quinquaginta trium.

rentur, section 3. The words *partim qui* twice repeated gave the subdivision of the *nonnullis Gallis* above. This is a separate division parallel to it.

conducendos. *Conducere* is "to hire," "to take into pay;" hence *conducti*, "mercenary soldiers," as opposed to volunteers. Cp. the Italian *condottiere*, derived from the same verb.

facultates. "Money," "means." See note on I. 38, 3.

regna occupabantur. See note on I. 3, 4. *Occupare* is "to seize," "to take," not to hold or occupy.

imperio nostro. Cp. I. 18, 5, and see note on I. 13, 2.

2.

1. **duas legiones—novas conscripsit.** *Novas*, from its position, is evidently used as a predicate. "He enrolled anew two legions." These fresh legions were the thirteenth and fourteenth; with them Caesar's army now consisted of eight legions.

inita aestate. *Ineo*, "to enter upon," "to begin," is a transitive, and so may be used personally in the passive.

deduceret. [§ 150.]

2. **ad exercitum venit.** Caesar's army was in winter quarters among the Sequani, under the command of Labienus. I. 54, 2.

3. **quae gerantur** [§ 149] **cognoscant.** *Cognoscere* is "to get to know," "to become acquainted with;" hence it is the regular military term for "to reconnoitre."

4. **constanter.** "Consistently."

5. **dubitandum quin proficisceretur.** [App. II., IV. (*C.*) V. 2 (2), p. 167.]

diebus quindecim. Ablative of "time within which" [§ 120].

3.

1. **omni opinione celerius.** "With greater speed than any one had expected." Caesar more commonly uses *omnium opinione* in this sense.

proximi Galliae. See note on I. 1, 3.

primos civitatis. [N. S. VI. *C.* 3, p. 139.]

2. **qui dicerent** [§ 150] **se suaque omnia—permittere.** *Se* is here omitted as the *subject* to *permittere*, because the meaning is clear, and the repetition would be awkward. See on I. 7, 3, *rogare*.

3. **paratosque esse et obsides dare et imperata facere.** "They were ready both to give hostages and to carry out the orders given."

oppidis recipere. "To receive him in their towns." [§ 112.]

4. **cis Rhenum.** [§ 83.] The western side of the Rhine; "this side" as viewed from the Roman province. Cp. **29**, 4.

4, 5. **incolant—utantur—habeant—potuerint quin consentirent.** Throughout this reported speech, although the introductory verb is historic in tense (*dicerent*), Caesar, for the sake of vivid narrative (see note on *Reported Speech*, III. *note* (4)), uses the original *tenses* of the speaker. This explanation includes the historic tense *consentirent*, since *deterrere potuimus quin consentirent* is regular in the sense "we have not been able to prevent them from agreeing (at some previous time)." Cp. ROBY, § 1510.

4.

1. **essent—possent.** [§ 149.]

plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis. The question of the origin of the Belgae is one on which there is but little evidence. On the one hand we know, both from this passage in Caesar and from Tacitus' *Germania*, that many of the Belgae claimed a German origin, and pointed to an ancient tradition of having occupied the country by conquest. The Treveri and Nervii distinctly claimed this origin. (TAC. *Germ.* 28.) So, too, in I. 1, 2, Caesar tells us that the Belgae differed from the Celtic Gauls in manners, customs, and laws. On the other hand, the names of many of the tribes and places among the Belgae are evidently derived from Celtic roots.

Rhenum traductos. *I.e. trans Rhenum ductos.* See note on I. **12**, 2.

antiquitus. "From ancient time;" the termination *-tus* in Latin, as *-θεν* in Greek, implying *motion from*. So *cœli-tus*, *fundi-tus*.

2. **memoria.** [§ 120.] See note on I. **13**, 2, *bello Cassiano.*

solosque esse qui—prohibuerint. The perfect subjunctive *prohibuerint* here is used, though it follows an historic tense, *reperiebat*, because in a consecutive sentence (*qui*= "such that they") it is describing an event in past time,

simply regarded as a completed act by itself, and not considered in relation to other past acts. Cp. ROBY, § 1516.

3. **qua ex re fieri.** Infinitive in a relative clause. See note on *Reported Speech*, II. (*d*), *note* (1).

4. **omnia se habere explorata.** The use of the verb *habeo* with the past participle is a periphrastic form, which is very closely parallel to the modern English form, "they had carefully examined all." It means, however, in classical Latin more than *exploravisse*, signifying not only that they had made the examination, but that the results were still before them. It became more frequent in later Latin, and finally superseded the old form of the perfect altogether; the modern French perfect *aimai* being in fact only the corruption of *amatum habeo*, just as *ai* by itself is a corruption of *habeo*. Cp. I. 15, 1; I. 18, 2; MADV. § 427. The Greeks used a somewhat similar expression, but with the active instead of the passive participle, *e.g.* *ἀτιμάσας ἔχει* (EUR. *Med.* 33).

propinquitatibus affinitatibusque. "Ties of neighbourhood and intermarriage."

pollicitus sit cognoverint. Here Caesar drops from the historical *dicebant* into the more vivid primary tenses, which the Remi would themselves have used. See note on *Reported Speech*, III. *note* (4).

5. **conficere.** "To bring together," "to collect."

electa sexaginta. Sc. *milia.* "Sixty thousand picked men."

7. **nostra memoria.** [§ 120.]

totius Galliae potentissimum. [N. S. VI. *C.* 3, p. 139.]

8. **totidem Nervios.** Sc. *polliceri.*

ipsos. *I.e. Belgas.*

10. **qui appellantur.** Notice here the indicative, which is used in the middle of an *oratio obliqua.* It is not really a part of the *oratio obliqua*, but the parenthetical explanation made by the author to his readers. Cp. 1, 3.

arbitrari. Sc. *se*, *i.e. Remos*, which is the subject to the verb. "The Condrusi, they said, they considered to be about forty thousand."

5.

1. **liberaliter oratione prosecutus.** "When he had addressed them in a friendly spirit." *Prosequi*, which originally

meant "to escort a friend on the way when leaving," came to mean "to compliment." So *laudibus prosequi. Liberaliter* means strictly "as one free man should treat another."

senatum. See note on I. 31, 6.

ad diem. "At the appointed time;" as in English, "to the day." See on I. 7, 4, *ad idus.*

2. **rei publicae intersit.** [§ 129; N. S. VI. *B.* (1), p. 138.] Cp. Roby, § 1285.

4. **ab iis.** These words are to be taken with *exploratoribus cognovit,* not with *abesse.*

flumen Axonam exercitum traducere. See note on I. 12, 2.

5. **ripis.** For the use of the plural, see note on I. 37, 3.

post eum quae essent. [§ 150.]

6. **In eo flumine.** "*On* that river." Cp. I. 13, 1.

in altera parte fluminis. *I.e.* on the left bank. See *Plan,* p. 117.

fossa duodeviginti pedum. See on I. 8, 1. When Caesar speaks of the size of a fosse without specifying the direction of measurement, he means generally, as here, to give the breadth. Translate, "He orders him to fortify a camp, with a rampart to the height of twelve feet, and a fosse of eighteen feet in breadth."

6.

1. **milia passuum octo.** See on I. 22, 5.

ex itinere. See on I. 25, 5.

sustentatum est. The impersonal participle of an intransitive verb. [N. S. IX. *E. b.* p. 144.] So *sustinere* is used intransitively in section 4.

2. **totis moenibus.** [N. S. V. *G.* p. 137.] Cp. *latere aperto circumvenire,* I. 25, 5.

jaci coepti sunt. The deponent perfect of *coepi* is used generally with passive infinitives. Cp. I. 47, 1.

defensoribus. [119, *b.*]

testudine. See note on *Army,* § 9.

portas succedunt. See note on I. 12, 2, *flumen traduxisse.*

subruunt. "Pull down from below," "undermine." The simple verb *ruo* is used both transitively and intransitively.

3. **nulli.** Notice the emphatic position of this word at the end of the sentence. Cp. I. 7, 3; II. 35, 4.

4. **Iccius—summa nobilitate.** [§ 115.]

praefuerat. "Had been made and was then governor."

legati. See 3, 1.

submittatur. "Sent to their help." See on *subministrare*, I. 40, 11.

7.

1. **de media nocte.** See note on I. 12, 2, *de tertia vigilia.*

ducibus. Predicate; "using as guides."

sagittarios—funditores. See note on *Army*, § 3.

subsidio. [§ 108.]

2. **adventu.** Ablative of time [§ 120]. See note on I. 13, 2, *bello Cassiano.*

potiundi oppidi. Cp. III. 6, 2, *potiundorum castrorum.* The gerundive attraction [§ 143] is mainly used in transitive verbs; and probably this use of *potior* is due to an older transitive construction, traces of which are found as in Terence (*Ad.* 871), "*patria potitur commoda,*" and elsewhere. Sallust has "*ejus* (*sc. oppidi*) *potiundi*" (*Jug.* 89). For a similar reason we find "*ad perfruendas voluptates*" in Cic. *de Off.* I. 8, 1.

3. **vicis aedificiisque.** See note on I. 5, 2.

potuerant. Pluperfect, as being past in reference to the principal verb *contenderunt.*

omnibus copiis. See note on I. 25, 5, *hominum milibus.*

ab milibus passuum. See note on I. 22, 5.

minus duobus. For *minus* (*quam*) *duobus.* See on I. 38, 5. But, below, *amplius* is used with the ordinary "ablative of the thing compared" [§ 124]. Cp. I. 15, 5.

8.

1. **opinionem virtutis.** "Reputation for valour." [§ 132.]

proelio supersedere. *Supersedeo* means to "be above a thing," "to desist" or "refrain from" doing it; and is constructed with an ablative, like *careo*, etc. [§ 123.]

2. **equestribus proeliis.** "Cavalry skirmishes," as opposed to *proelio* above, "a pitched battle."

posset. [§ 149.]

nostri. See note on I. 1, 1.

periclitabatur. "Kept making trial." See on *periculum facere*, I. 40, 5.

3. **Ubi nostros, etc.** The site described in this section is

identified by Napoleon (*History of Julius Caesar*, vol. ii. ch. 5) with a hill now named Mauchamp, lying between the Aisne (*Axona*) and its little tributary the Miette, which Caesar does not mention. (See *Plan*, p. 117.) The camp lay on the face of the hill fronting the Miette, and the *acies* was drawn out on the gentle slope before it. The N.E. and S.W. *ends* of the hill sink by slight undulations, but on the S.W. the marshes about the course of the Miette would protect the Roman left flank. To secure the right Caesar drew two trenches at right angles to the direction of the ridge (*transversas*), one running N.W. to the Miette, the other S.E. to the Aisne, and placed a redoubt (*castellum*) at the end of each. These formed a barrier (*obduxit*) to the enemy in any attempt to outflank the right wing of the Romans. This explanation, though said to be supported by traces of the camp and fosses and redoubts discovered in excavation, is somewhat difficult to reconcile with the text, for—

(1) *Lateris dejectus* is translated as meaning the slopes at the *ends* of the ridge as opposed to *fronte*, whilst *ab utroque latere* is interpreted as meaning "either *face*."

(2) If only the right flank of the Romans was exposed, it is strange that Caesar should not have said so, and more than this, that he should have used the phrase *a lateribus circumvenire*, rather than *a latere*, or *a latere dextro*.

Kraner's interpretation seems to fit the text better, viz. that the *fossae* were drawn one on *each* flank back to the Aisne, the redoubts being placed at the ends away from the river. His interpretation of *lateris dejectus* as "precipitous" instead of "sloping sides" is hardly justified, however, by the general usage of the word.

loco opportuna. [§ 125, *a.*] *Opportunus*, from *ob* and *portus*, probably in the sense of "*before* or *near* a harbour;" and then generally "conveniently placed." Cp. *obvius*, "in the way."

adversus. *I.e.* "facing the enemy;" or, which is the same thing, "the plain."

quantum loci. The addition of *loci* in the relative clause is superfluous to the sense, since *tantum patebat* is equivalent to *tantum loci patebat.* Cp. *itinera quibus itineribus*, I. 6, 1, etc.

lateris dejectus. "Sloping sides."

leniter fastigatus. "Running up to a ridge, with a gentle declivity."

redibat, etc. "Dropped to the plain."

ab utroque latere. "On each side." Cp. I. 1, 4, *ab Sequanis.*

passuum CD. See note on I. 8, 1.

4. **tormenta.** See note on *Army*, § 9.

suos. Referring to the subject of *collocavit.* See note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*a*).

5. **proxime.** See 2, 1.

si quo opus esset. *Quo* is an adverb. "Whithersoever it might be necessary (to lead them)."

subsidio. [§ 108.]

9.

1. **si transirent—exspectabant.** See note on I. 8, 4, *conati, si.*

2. **neutri.** The plural of *uter, alter, neuter, uterque*, is used when each of the alternatives is itself plural in sense.

secundiore proelio. [§ 125, *a*.]

3. **protinus.** From *pro-tenus; tenus* being of the same origin as *tendo, teneo, τείνω.* "Stretching forward," "thereafter."

4. **castellum—pontem.** See 5, 6.

interscinderent. "Break down." For this force of *inter* in composition, see on I. 13, 5, *internicione.*

minus. Equivalent to *non.* See note on I. 48, 6, *si quid erat durius.*

popularentur. Depends on *eo consilio ut*, above.

10.

1. **levis armaturae N.** See note on *Army*, § 1.

pontem traducit. See note on I. 12, 2, *flumen traduxisse.*

3. **equitatu.** See note on I. 8, 1, *ea legione.*

4. **res frumentaria ipsos deficere.** *Deficio* is frequently used transitively when its subject is neuter or abstract (not personal). Cp. III. 5, 1.

introduxissent. [§ 151.] The subjunctive, as being part of the resolution taken by the Belgae.

convenirent. The subjunctive of *oratio obliqua* as representing the imperative of *oratio recta.* See note on *Reported Speech,* II. (*c*). Notice the change of expression between *optimum esse* (*i.e.* in *oratio recta, optimum est*), and *convenirent* (*i.e. conveniamus*).

copiis. "Resources," as in I. 3, 5.

5. **Divitiacum.** See 5, 2, 3.

finibus. See note on I. 12, 2, *flumen traduxisse.*

cognoverant. Indicative, as expressing what had actually occurred, not the thought in their minds. See note on *patebant,* I. 2, 4.

His. Sc. *the Bellovaci,* who formed part of the Belgic army.

neque. For *et* (*persuaderi*) *ne. Neve* is ordinarily used as an equivalent to *et ne, neque* to *et non.*

11.

1. **secunda vigilia.** See note on *Army,* § 10.

nullo certo ordine neque imp. [§ 125, *a.*]

consimiles. *Con* is intensive here, as in *conclamavit,* I. 47, 6, and *coemere,* I. 3, 1.

2. **per speculatores.** See note on *Army,* § 4; and on I. 3, 6, *per tres populos.*

discederent. [§ 149.]

exercitum equitatumque. See note on I. 24, 1, *copias equitatumque.*

castris. [§ 112.] See on I. 40, 8.

3. **exploratoribus.** See note on *Army,* § 4.

qui—moraretur. [§ 150.]

His. Referring to the collective noun antecedent *equitatum* by *synesis* [§ 160]. See [N. S. I. 3, p. 133].

legatos. See note on *Army,* § 5 (*b*).

4. **novissimos adorti—multitudinem eorum.** See note on I. 12, 3.

eorum fugientium. "Of them whilst in flight."

cum—consisterent, etc. These words give the reason of the great slaughter. [§ 152, I. (3).]

ab extremo agmine. "*On* the rear."

5. **viderentur.** [§ 151.] The subjunctive, as expressing the thought in the minds of the Belgae.

necessitate. "Compulsion."

exaudito clamore perturbatis ord. See on I. 24, 3, *rejecto equitatu.*

ponerent. Depends on the *cum* in section 4.

6. **quantum diei spatium fuit.** A rather loose way of expressing that the number of slain was only limited by the duration of daylight. "As large a number as the length of day permitted."

sub occasum solis. "Just after sunset."

12.

1. **Postridie ejus diei.** See on I. 47, 2.

priusquam—reciperent. Subjunctive, as expressing Caesar's purpose. [§ 152, III. (1).]

proximi Remis. See on I. 1, 3.

magno itinere. It was a march of about thirty miles.

2. **ex itinere oppugnare.** See on I. 25, 5, and note on *Army*, § 9.

paucis defendentibus. "Although there were few to defend it." [§ 125.]

expugnare. "To take by storm."

3. **vineas.** See note on *Army*, § 9.

4. **ex fuga.** "After their flight." Notice the position of the words between *omnis* and *multitudo;* though grammatically they qualify *convenit,* they serve also in sense to qualify the noun. "All the S. who had fled from the battle."

5. **aggere jacto, etc.** See note on *Army*, § 9. For the ablatives absolute see on I. 24, 3, *rejecto equitatu.*

operum. The siege-works.

ut conservarentur. "That they might be spared." It is perhaps best to make these words depend on *petentibus*, *impetrant* being used absolutely.

13.

1. **primis civitatis.** [§ 130.] *Civitatis=civium* [N. S. VI. *C.* 3, p. 139].

2. **milia passuum quinque.** See note on I. 22, 5.

natu. [§ 116.]

in ejus fidem ac potestatem, etc. "Surrendered at discretion." *Fides* expresses their reliance on his protection; *potestatem* their submission to his authority.

3. **passis manibus suo more.** Cp. I. 51, 3, where the same expression is used of the Germans.

14.

1. **eum.** *Sc.* Caesar. Cp. I. 53, 8.

2. **omni tempore.** See note on I. 11, 3.

fide. As above, in 13, 2, means "protection."

civitatis Aeduae. See note on I. 12, 4, *civitas Helvetia.*

3. **omnes indignitates, etc.** "All kinds of ill-treatment and insult."

4. **Qui.** The antecedent is the subject of *profugisse.*

5. **sua.** Emphatic: "his own (well-known) clemency." See note on 31, 4.

mansuetudine. Derived from *manus* and *suetus:* literally "used to the hand," *i.e.* "tame," and so "gentle."

eos. Not *se*, since the subject of *petere*, to which it refers, is rather *Aeduos* than *Bellovacos.*

utatur. For change of sequence see note on I. 7, 3, *liceat.*

6. **amplificaturum.** The subject is not expressed, being the same as that of the preceding clause, *quod si fecerit.*

sustentare. Either absolute, as in 6, 1, or with the clause *si qua bella*, etc., as object.

consuerint. Sc. *Aedui.* For *consuerunt*, a present-perfect, in *oratio recta.*

15.

1. **Divitiaci.** [§ 132.] "Of doing honour *to* D."

quod erat—poposcit. *I.e.* "though he accepted their surrender for Divitiacus' sake, yet because they were one of the most powerful Belgic tribes, he required 600 hostages."

4. **Nullum aditum, etc.** Cp. I. 1, 3.

vini. [§ 131.]

[eorum]. The text is probably at fault here, for the sense of the passage requires *hominum;* and even if Caesar had meant to say "their own minds," we should have expected to find *suos*, as referring to the subject of *existimarent.*

existimarent. [§ 151.]

feros. "Barbarous." See on I. 31, 5.

magnae virtutis. [§ 128.]

5. **increpitare.** "To rail against."

incusare. "To upbraid."

qui. =*Quod ii*, and therefore would be followed by a subjunctive in *oratio recta* also. [§ 150.]

16.

1. **triduum.** [§ 102 (1).] The genitive is a commoner construction. Cp. I. 38, 1.

milia passuum x. See note on I. 22, 5.

amplius. For the omission of *quam*, see note on I. 38, 5.

2. **Atrebatis.** The name elsewhere in Caesar is *Atrebates*.

3. **eandem.** *I.e.* "the same as themselves."

5. **per aetatem.** "On account of age." *Per* is used in the sense of "without hindrance from;" that which does not hinder an action being looked on as helping it, *i.e.* as in a way instrumental to it (Roby, § 2037). Cp. III. 9, 2, *per anni tempus*.

conjecisse. The subject (*eos*) must be supplied from the *ab his* of the preceding sentence; as, in 15, 4, the subject of *pati* is supplied from the *ad eos* before.

exercitui. "*An* army."

17.

1. **exploratores centurionesque.** See note on *Army*, §§ 4, 5 (*e*), and 10.

qui deligant. [§ 150.]

2. **dediticiis Gallis.** The Suessiones, Bellovaci, and Ambiani. See 12-14.

eorum dierum—exercitus. Of the three genitives, *itineris* qualifies *consuetudine*, defining the *kind* of *consuetudo*; *eorum dierum* qualifies *consuetudine itineris* together in the same way, "the usual march order of those days." Cp. *tridui viam*, I. 38, 1. *Exercitus* is genitive of the possessor [§ 127], also qualifying *itineris consuetudine*.

impedimentorum. The heavy baggage drawn by the *jumenta*, as distinguished from the soldier's pack (*sarcina*). See note on *Army*, § 6.

in castra. *I.e.* "to the site chosen for the camp."

magnum spatium. See note on I. 22, 5.

3. **futurum ut auderent.** See note on *Reported Speech*, III. (*b*), *note* (1).

contra consistere. "To maintain their ground against the attack."

4. **antiquitus.** "Traditionally." See note on **4,** 1.

quicquid possunt valent. "All their strength lies in." *Quicquid possunt* qualifies *valent* adverbially, just like *plurimum* in the common phrase *plurimum posse.*

incisis. Not "cut down" but "cut into," "nicked" so as to bend more easily.

in latitudinem. "To" or "along the breadth."

interjectis. "Placed in between." The young trees were bent till their trunks lay in a horizontal position; the boughs springing up along the trunk formed a hedge.

instar muri. *Instar* is an indeclinable substantive meaning *likeness*, and its construction here is strictly an apposition to *munimenta.* But it is commonly used in the sense of an adjective, "like," "equivalent to," "as good as."

posset. [§ 150.]

5. **consilium.** *I.e.* the scheme of attacking the Romans whilst on their march.

18.

1. **Loci natura.** On this description of the battlefield see *Plan*, p. 124.

aequaliter. "Uniformly."

2. **acclivitate.** A slope viewed from below; *declivis*, in section 1, being applied to the slope of the hill viewed from the top.

adversus huic et contrarius. "Facing this hill and opposite to it," *i.e.* on the other side of the river.

passus—ducentos. See I. **22,** 5.

infimus apertus. *Apertus* qualifies the single notion formed by *infimus collis*, "the bottom of the hill." See note on I. **18,** 6, *proelium equestre adversum.*

introrsus. Contracted from *introversus.* So *rursus* (*reversus*), *prorsus, seorsum, quorsum.*

3. **secundum.** "Along"=*sequondum*, *i.e.* the accusative of the verbal noun from *sequor* used as a preposition. See on I. **33,** 2.

stationes. "Pickets." See note on *Army*, § 10.

videbantur. Passive, "were seen," not "seemed:" so below in **19,** 6.

pedum trium. See note on I. **8,** 1.

19.

1. **omnibus copiis.** See note on I. 25, 5, *hominum milibus.*

2. **agminis.** Used here in its proper sense of "marching line." See note on *Army*, § 6.

aliter—ac. *Ac* and *atque* (more rarely *et*; see on I. 37, 1) are used after adverbs and adjectives denoting nearness, identity, similarity, and the opposites of these, where we use "than" or "as." The two members of such sentences are strictly two co-ordinate clauses, *e.g. Ego aliter sentio ac tu* (*aliter sentis*), meaning literally "I feel otherwise *and* so do you."

3. **hosti.** See note on I. 12, 2, *flumen traduxisse.*

consuetudine sua. [§ 113.] See on I. 7, 3, *ejus voluntate.*

expeditas. See note on *Army*, § 2 (*d*).

proxime. See 2, 1.

agmen claudebant. "Brought up the rear."

praesidio. [§ 108.]

5. **identidem.** "Repeatedly." For *idem et idem*, or *idem itidem*, of a thing done again and again. (Gr. ἑκάστοτε.)

silvas. Different parts of the forest: *silva* the forest as a whole, opposed to the *aperta loca.*

quem ad finem. Concisely for *ad eum finem ad quem*; the antecedent being taken into the relative clause.

porrecta loca aperta. *Porrecta* is part of the predicate; *pertinebant porrecta* = "reached in extent."

opere dimenso. "The measurements for the (camp) fortifications being completed." See note on *Army*, § 10. For the passive use of the deponent participle, cp. I. 11, 4, *depopulatis agris.*

6. **quod tempus.** Referring to *ubi* above = *eo tempore cum.*

convenerat. See note on I. 36, 5.

ut—confirmaverant. "In the order in which they had formed their ranks for battle within the woods, and as they had made up their minds to attack."

aciem ordinesque. A kind of *hendiadys*; "their battle order and ranks," for "the ranks of their battle order."

omnibus copiis. See note on I. 25, 5, *hominum milibus.*

7. **pulsis.** "Dislodged from their position."

proturbatis. "Driven before the advancing enemy."

ut paene—viderentur. "That the enemy seemed almost at the same moment to be at the forest, in the river, and already at close quarters with us." For this sense of *manus*, cp. Livy, II. 46, "*in manus venire.*"

8. **adverso colle.** [§ 125, *a.*] "Up the hill;" literally, "the hill facing them."

20.

1. **Caesari.** [§ 107, *d.*]

vexillum. See note on *Army*, § 8.

insigne. A substantive, as in I. 22, 1, but here in a different sense; "a signal flag:" and so distinguished from *signum* below, the signal given by sound of trumpet.

opere. *I.e.* of fortifying the camp. Cp. III. 3, 1, etc.

aggeris. The materials (earth, stone, etc.) of which the wall of the camp was built; more commonly the word is used of the wall itself.

2. **successus.** "The approach" from the lower ground (*sub*).

impediebat. The verb is singular, because the two subjects, *brevitas temporis* and *successus hostium*, practically express but one notion, "the shortness of the time *caused by* the approach of the enemy." See note on 24, 3.

3. **subsidio.** [§ 108.]

scientia. "Technical knowledge of their duties;" *usus*, "practical experience in battle." Cp. III. 8, 1.

oporteret. [§ 149.]

ipsi sibi praescribere. "Give themselves the needful orders." *Ipsi* has here the sense of "voluntarily," "untaught." See on I. 44, 4.

singulisque singulos. See note on I. 48, 5.

4. **exspectabant.** "Waited for."

videbantur. "Seemed *right*;" like the Greek ἐδόκουν.

21.

1. **necessariis.** *I.e.* what was indispensable, and nothing else.

imperatis. *Impero* being transitive, as followed by an

accusative of the thing ordered, has in this construction a personal passive voice.

quam partem. The antecedent, *in eam partem*, must be supplied after *decucurrit.* "He ran down the hill to that part of the line which chance put in his way."

decucurrit. The reduplication is commonly dropped in compounds of verbs which have a reduplicated perfect, but is not seldom retained in compounds of *curro.* Cp. however 19, 7.

2. **quam uti suae—sustinerent.** "Than (to urge them) to hold fast the memory of their ancient deeds of valour, and not lose their presence of mind, but boldly sustain the enemy's onset." *Que* (*hostiumque*) couples *sustinerent* to *uti—retinerent.*

animo. [§ 116.]

quod—aberant. These words give the reason why Caesar gave the signal for battle.

quo—posset. [§ 150.]

3. **pugnantibus occurrit.** "Finds them already engaged."

4. **insignia.** "Accoutrements," as in I. 22, 1.

galeas induendas, etc. See note on *Army*, § 2 (*d*).

defuerit. See note on 4, 2, *prohibuerint.*

5. **ad haec.** Agreeing with its nearer antecedent *signa.*

22.

1. **dejectusque collis.** "The slope of the hill," added to explain *natura loci.* For this explanatory use of *que*, see on I. 27, 4.

rei mil. ratio atque ordo. "Military science and arrangement," = "scientific military arrangement." *Hendiadys*, as in 19, 6, *aciem ordinesque.*

diversis legionibus. [§ 125.] Ablative absolute, and not in the nominative with *aliae* (as it might have been); in order to bring out the reason of the disorder more strongly. "When, because the legions were separated (by the nature of the ground) from each other, they were fighting," etc.

diversis. A participle here rather than an adjective. Cp. 23, 3.

ante. Viz. in 17, 4.

certa subsidia. "Any definite reserves." The movements of the enemy were concealed, and the point of each fresh attack uncertain, so that Caesar could not tell where to place reserves.

quid—opus esset. [§ 149], and see note on I. **34,** 2.

2. **in tanta rerum, etc.** "Where the conditions were so unfavourable, the issues also of fortune varied."

23.

1. **acie.** [§ 130.] *Aciei* and even *acii* are found as genitives of this word, but, according to Aulus Gellius, Caesar preferred the genitive in *-e* from words of this declension. AUL. GELL. IX. 14. Cp. ROBY, § 357.

constiterant. "Had taken up their position." See the *Plan*, p. 124.

exanimatos. Derived from *ex-anima*. "Out of breath," "exhausted;" accusative agreeing with *Atrebates*.

ea pars. The left of the Roman line. See the *Plan*, p. 124.

compulerunt. "Drove them altogether," *i.e.* along the whole line.

impeditam. "Embarrassed," "hampered," *i.e.* by having to cross the stream.

2. **Ipsi.** *I.e.* the soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions.

3. **diversae duae legiones.** "The two legions which were separated." *Diversae*, participle from *diverto*, as in **22,** 1.

quibuscum erant congressi. The nominative is *milites* or *legionarii*, to be supplied from *legionis* by *synesis*. [§ 160.] Cp. **26,** 5, *qui*.

ex loco superiore. This goes closely with *profligatis Viromanduis*.

4. **non magno intervallo.** See note on I. **22,** 5.

confertissimo agmine. [§ 125, *a*.] See note on I. **24,** 3.

5. **aperto latere.** "On the unprotected side," *i.e.* the right, for beyond these legions there were no other troops in that direction. See the *Plan*, p. 124. Cp. I. **25,** 5.

24.

1. **levis armaturae pedites.** "The light-armed infantry." Cp. **10,** 1; and see note on *Army*, § 1.

dixeram. See note on **1,** 1. This repulse of cavalry had been mentioned in **19,** 7.

adversis hostibus occurrebant. "Met the enemy right opposite them." As they were returning to the camp, they found the Nervii just reaching it.

2. **calones.** "Soldiers' servants." See note on *Army*, § 4.

ab decumana porta. See note on *Army*, § 10.

summo jugo collis. *I.e.* the hill at the top of which the camp stood.

3. **qui cum impedimentis veniebant.** *I.e.* the drivers of the baggage waggons, not the legionary soldiers, who brought up the rear; for these are mentioned later, **26**, 3.

clamor fremitusque oriebatur. Here the verb is singular, because *clamor fremitusque* expresses but one idea; "shouting and hubbub," "confused shouting." See note on **20**, 2.

ferebantur. "Rushed off."

4. **opinio virtutis.** "Reputation for valour." [§ 102.]

diversos. Participle from *diverto.* "Turned in various directions," "scattered." Cp. **22**, 1.

desperatis. Passive participle. *Desperare* is often transitive (*desperare salutem*) as well as intransitive (*desperare de salute*).

5. **castris.** [§ 119, *a.*]

25.

1. A very complicated sentence, because of the long series of qualifying clauses which extends from *ab decimae* to *sine scuto venerat.* The series is to be analyzed thus :—

(1) A participial clause qualifying *Caesar; ab decimae legionis cohortatione—profectus.*

(2) A long relatival clause extending from *ubi suos urgeri* to *submitti posset.*

(3) A participial clause, with a relatival clause appended, *scuto—detracto, quod ipse eo sine scuto venerat.*

The long relatival clause (2) is further divided up into

(*a*) Accusatives with infinitives depending on *vidit*, viz. (1) *milites—esse impedimento*, (2) *reliquos esse tardiores*, (3) *nonnullos—excedere ac tela vitare*, (4) *hostis neque intermittere—et instare*, (5) *rem esse in angusto*, (6) *neque ullum esse subsidium.*

(*b*) Ablatives absolute inserted as qualifying these infinitives, viz. *signis—collatis*, qualifying (1) *esse impedi-*

mento ; centurionibus occisis—signo amisso—Baculo confecto, qualifying (2) *reliquos esse tardiores ; deserto loco*, qualifying (3) *excedere.*

But besides this, owing partly to the length of the sentence, and partly to the fact that he had omitted the conjunction (which naturally would have come before *quartae*), Caesar, in order to show the dependence of the infinitives *reliquos esse tardiores*, etc., which are separated from their governing verb *vidit* by the ablatives absolute, repeats the verb *vidit* below, although strictly it is superfluous. For a similar repetition of a word where the construction would have been grammatical without it (called *epanalepsis*), cp. I. 35, 4, *sese—se Aeduorum injurias non neglecturum.* In our English idiom a somewhat similar repetition is not uncommon. "He, when he saw—he, I say, would not." Cp. in the English Prayer Book, "Almighty God —He pardoneth and absolveth." See also note on III. 22, 4.

ab decimae legionis cohortatione. Notice the use of the abstract noun where we might have expected the gerundive attraction. "After exhorting the tenth legion." Cp. *munitione*, I. 49, 3.

signis in unum locum collatis. The standards were all collected together, and the men closely packed, because, owing to the pressure of the enemy's attack, they were not able to maintain their proper order. See note on *Army*, § 7.

sibi—impedimento. [§ 108.]

primipilo P. Sextio Baculo. The same man is referred to again in III. 5, 2, where he is called *primi pili centurio.* For the meaning of the two expressions, cp. note on *Army*, § 5 (*e*).

ab novissimis. "Towards the rear." Cp. for this common use of *ab*, I. 1, 4. These words must be taken closely with *excedere*, not with *nonnullos*, "some of the rear rank," which would require rather *de* or *ex*.

neque a fronte—intermittere et—instare. Here *neque* and *et* correspond to one another, "both not"—"and." Or, as we should translate, "saw them coming up without any intermission, *and at the same time* pressing on them." *Intermittere* is intransitive here, as in I. 38, 5; see on I. 26, 6.

quod submitti posset. [§ 150.] "Which could be sent up to the aid," according to a common meaning of *sub* in compounds. See note on I. 40, 11.

[uni] militi. *Uni*, if retained here, is used, as occasionally also in Cicero (*e.g. ad Att.* IX. 10, 2), in very much the same sense as our indefinite article, "*a* soldier." Cp. the French derivative *un*, *une*. In late Greek εἷς was used in the same way. The English *a*, *an*, and *one* were in their original forms identical.

signa inferre et manipulos laxare. "To attack the enemy and to open out their companies," *i.e.* to leave a wider space between each soldier; for, as we were told above, they were *conferti*. *Manipulus*, derived from *manus*, originally "a handful" or "bundle," then applied to a small division of soldiers in the Roman army. See note on *Army*, § 2 (*c*). In early times their standard consisted of a pole with a handful of straw or hay: so "*Pertica suspensos portabat longa maniplos, unde maniplaris nomina miles habet*" (OVID, *Fasti*, III. 1178).

quo facilius possent. [N. S. V. *E.* p. 137.]

2. **Cujus adventu.** [§ 112.]

26.

1. **juxta.** *I.e.* near the twelfth legion. See the *Plan*, p. 124.

tribunos militum monuit, ut paulatim sese legiones conjungerent. "He ordered the tribunes of the soldiers (see note on *Army*, § 5 (*d*)) to cause the legions gradually to draw together, and after changing their front, to attack the enemy." Of this manœuvre, somewhat vaguely described by Caesar, there are three possible explanations :—

(1) The legions were to fight back to back, one having faced about (*signa conversa*).

(2) The legions were to wheel round (*signa conversa*), to bring themselves into line, and then together attack the enemy.

(3) The legions, after drawing together, were to wheel so as to form an angle with one another, and face the enemy in two directions.

Of these three explanations the last may be compared with I. 25, 5, 6, where a parallel manœuvre is described in very similar language.

2. **neque timerent, ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur.** "And were no longer afraid that they should be surrounded by the enemy, while their backs were turned," *i.e.* that the enemy should surround and attack them in the rear. The exact meaning of this passage depends of course on

the meaning attached to the manœuvre described above; the corresponding explanations being

(1) Because the united legions fronted both ways, and so could not be attacked in the rear.

(2) Because the united line would extend far enough to prevent the enemy from outflanking them.

(3) Because the flank of each legion was protected by the other.

timerent. The subject is *milites*, to be supplied from *alius alii*, above.

3. **legionum duarum.** *I.e.* the thirteenth and fourteenth. Cp. 19, 3.

proelio nuntiato cursu incitato. For this double ablative absolute, see note on I. 24, 3.

4. **gererentur.** [§ 149.]

subsidio nostris. [§ 108.]

5. **Qui.** Masculine plural, agreeing with *legionarii*, implied in *legionem* by *synesis*. [§ 160.] Cp. 23, 3.

quo in loco res esset. [§ 149.] "What was the position of affairs."

quanto in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator versaretur. Notice the singular verb used with more than one subject. This occurs when, as here, the nearest subject is in the singular, and special stress is to be laid upon it. "In what danger the camp, the legions, and, above all, the commander, were being involved."

nihil ad celeritatem reliqui [§ 131] **fecerunt.** "Left nothing undone in reference to speed," *i.e.* which could add to their speed. So in Livy, VII. 35, "*nihil vobis fortuna reliqui fecerit.*"

27.

1. **procubuissent.** [§ 150.]

scutis. [§ 106, *a.*]

inermes armatis. Notice the close juxtaposition of these opposites for emphasis: "though the enemy had arms, while they had none." *In-ermis*, derived from *in* (negative) and *arma*.

2. **quo se—praeferrent.** "In order that they might show themselves better than the soldiers of the legions."

3. **in extrema spe salutis.** "Even whilst in utter despair of safety." Cp. 25, 2, *in extremis suis rebus.*

jacentibus. [§ 106, *a.*]

pugnarent — conjicerent — remitterent (section 4). All depend upon *tantam virtutem praestiterunt ut*——.

4. **qui superessent.** [§ 150.]

pila intercepta remitterent. "Sent back the javelins which they had caught."

5. **ut non nequiquam tantae virtutis homines.** "So that it ought to be considered, that it was not without good reason that men of such valour had dared——"

quae facilia ex difficillimis. "All which the grandeur of their courage made easy, instead of being very difficult." *Ex*, literally "out of what had been."

28.

1. **gente ac nomine—redacto.** An adjective or participle intended to apply to two substantives, as here *redacto* to *gente* and *nomine*, is expressed only once, in which case it agrees with the nearest substantive. Cp. ROBY, § 1062.

nomine Nerviorum. *Nomen* (*i.e. gnomen* from (*g*)*nosco* = "that by which one is known," "name;" cp. *co-gnomen*, *i-gnominia*) is used often of a *people* all of whom bear the same name.

dixeramus. See note on 1, 1. The fact had been mentioned in 16, 5.

aestuaria. Derived from *aestus.* "Tidal river mouths." Cp. III. 9, 4.

nihil impeditum. Derived from *in* and *pes*, literally means "nothing entangled," "nothing in the way of the feet." Cp. *expedire*, "to disentangle." Translate "that there was no difficulty."

senatores. See note on I. 31, 6.

qui—possent. [§ 150.]

2. **ut usus misericordia videretur.** "That he might be seen to have shown pity." See on II. 18, 3.

conservavit. "Spared their lives." So in 12, 5.

ut—se suosque prohiberent. "That they should restrain themselves and their friends from doing injustice or harm to them."

29.

1. **supra.** *I.e.* in 16, 4.

omnibus copiis. See note on I. 25, 5, *hominum milibus.*

ex itinere. See on I. 25, 5.

2. **in unum oppidum.** The name and position of this town are alike uncertain. Some authorities (amongst them Napoleon) identify it with Namur, others again with Mount Falhize, near Huy, on the Meuse.

3. **despectus haberet.** It had uninterrupted views on all sides down (*de*) into the plain, owing to the steep rocks on which it was placed. Cp. *despectus in mare*, III. 14, 9.

in latitudinem non amplius ducentorum pedum. See notes on I. 8, 1, and I. 38, 5.

munierant—collocabant. Notice the change of tense: they *were* now adding to the old fortifications which they *had* built.

duplici altissimo muro. Notice the two adjectives used with one substantive without a conjunction. This often is found when one of the adjectives is a numeral as here, or an adjective of time or place. See on I. 18, 6.

praeacutas. "Sharpened *at the end.*" Cp. *praeustus.* In Greek the preposition πρό in composition is used with the same meaning, *e.g.* προήκης. See note on *praerumpebantur*, III. 14, 6.

4. **citra flumen Rhenum.** *I.e.* on the west of the Rhine, "this side" from the *provincia.* Cp. *cis Rhenum*, 3, 4. For the facts see *Geographical Index.*

5. **post eorum obitum.** *I.e.* their destruction by C. Marius at Aquae Sextiae in B.C. 102, and at the Campi Raudii, near Vercellae, in B.C. 101 (see *Introduction*, § 11). *Obire*, or in its fuller form, *obire mortem*, "to meet death," is generally used of individuals. Here *obitum* is used of the whole people.

alias—alias. Of time, not of place, in which latter meaning it is found only twice in Cicero, and not in other classical writers.

bellum—defenderent. "Ward off war;" the original meaning of *defendere*, "to strike down or off." So *offendere*, "to strike against." See note on I. 44, 13.

30.

1. **adventu.** [§ 120]. Cp. I. 13, 2, *bello Cassiano.*

exercitus nostri. Genitive singular, dependent on *adventu.*

parvulis. "Very slight." Formed from *parvus* with the common diminutive termination *-ulus.* Cp. *tantulus, puerulus.* See note on I. 8, 2.

2. **vallo passuum in circuitu xv milium.** The reading of the text in this passage is uncertain, and the great length of the *vallum* which our reading implies would lead us to suspect that the conjecture of *pedum* for *passuum* is probably correct.

circummuniti. *I.e.* hemmed in by the Roman siege-walls (*vallo—et castellis*).

3. **vineis actis aggere exstructo.** Cp. note on *Army,* § 9. For the double ablative absolute, see note on I. 24, 3.

turrim. *Turris* makes its accusative usually *turrim,* and ablative often *turri;* but *turrem* and *turre* are both found.

irridere—increpitare. Historical infinitives. [140, 2.]

increpitare vocibus, quod tanta—instrueretur. [§ 151.] "To jeer them loudly, because, as they said, such a great piece of mechanism was being constructed at so great a distance."

ab tanto spatio. See note on I. 22, 5.

corporum suorum. *Suorum* is used here referring back, not to the grammatical subject of the verb, which is impersonal, but to *hominibus,* which is in sense the subject of the sentence, as if Caesar had said *homines Galli contemnunt.* See on 35, 1. See note on *Se and Suus,* III.

contemptui. [§ 108.]

confiderent. For the subjunctive, see note on *Reported Speech,* II. (*b*).

31.

1. **moenibus.** See note on I. 12, 2, *flumen traduxisse.* Cp. 19, 3.

specie. "Appearance," "sight."

2. **non existimare.** *Se,* the subject of the infinitive, is omitted here, as in section 3.

4. Caesar here, as often, takes the opportunity of recording his reputation for clemency. Cp. 14, 5. We cannot help remembering, however, various instances in which such clemency in his dealing with foreign tribes or foreign princes was conspicuously absent, *e.g.* in III. 16, he relates how he killed

the chief men of the Veneti and sold the rest. His treatment of Vercingetorix, and his treachery towards the Usipetes and Tencteri (IV. 7-15), may be cited as other instances. On the other hand his clemency to his enemies in the civil war materially helped him in making his way to power. Cicero in his *Letters* often alludes to it with evident surprise.

armis despoliaret. [§ 119, *b.*]

32.

1. **consuetudine sua.** [§ 113.] "In accordance with his custom." See note on I. 7, 3, *ejus voluntate.*

merito eorum. [§ 111.] "Owing to any desert of theirs."

aries. See note on *Army*, § 9.

armis traditis. [§ 125.]

2. **in Nerviis.** "In the case of the Nervii." See note on I. 47, 4, *in eo.* For the historical fact here referred to see 28.

3. **quae imperarentur, facere dixerunt.** *Se* (or perhaps *eos*, referring to the preceding *suos*), the subject of the infinitive, is not expressed. Cp. 31, 2. The present *facere* is used instead of the future, to show that the terms were at once accepted. "They said that their friends were obedient to his commands."

4. **muri.** Cp. 29, 3.

aggeris. Cp. 30, 3.

ut prope summam—altitudinem adaequarent. *Prope* is here an adverb, and *adaequarent* a transitive verb governing *altitudinem.*

tertia parte. See note on I. 12, 2.

eo die pace sunt usi. "On that day they enjoyed peace."

33.

1. **Sub vesperum.** See note on I. 50, 3.

2. **quod deditione facta.** "Because they had thought that, as the surrender had been made, our men would withdraw their sentries, or at least maintain them somewhat carelessly."

denique. "(If the first alternative did not take place, then) secondly."

scutis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intextis. [§ 125.] "Partly with shields made of cork or with woven twigs:" *viminibus intextis* to be taken together. These shields are described by Tacitus (*Ann.* II. 14): "*Ne scuta quidem ferro nervove firmata, sed viminum textus vel tenues et fucatas colore tabulas.*"

qua. Adverb of place, "where."

arduus. "Steep."

omnibus copiis. See on I. 25, 5, *hominum milibus.*

3. **ignibus significatione facta.** "When warning had been given by fire-signals."

ex proximis castellis eo concursum est. "The men hurried to the spot from the nearest forts."

4. **extrema spe salutis.** See on 27, 3.

jacerent. [§ 150.]

5. **Occisis ad hominum milibus quattuor.** In numerical expressions in Latin *ad* is very commonly used to express "about," "up to." So I. 4, 2, *ad hominum milia decem.* Occasionally, as here, *ad milia* was treated as a single declinable expression, the *ad* being used adverbially, and losing its power over the government of the case; thus, nominative *ad milia* (cp. I. 29, 3), genitive *ad milium,* dative and ablative *ad milibus.* So "*Ad mille septingenti caesi*" (Livy, XXII. 41); "*Ad duorum milium numero*" (Caes. *B. C.* III. 53, 1).

6. **sectionem.** *Sectio* was a technical term in Roman law for the sale of confiscated goods. When a man's goods were confiscated to the state they were sold as a whole by public auction (*venire publice, sub hasta venire*), and the purchaser was called *sector.* This name (derived from *secare,* "to cut up") was given him, because such a purchaser generally divided up the property and sold it again in parts. The process was for the same reason called *sectio,* a name which was then transferred, as here, to the property sold. Translate, "Caesar sold publicly the whole confiscated property of that town." This "property" included, as the next sentence shows, the inhabitants themselves.

7. **capitum.** "Persons." See on I. 29, 2.

ad eum relatus est. "Was reported to him."

milium quinquaginta trium. Genitive qualifying

numerus, and defining it. Cp. Roby, § 1302. Cp. III. 10, 2. Translate, "The number of persons sold was returned as (a number of) fifty-three thousand."

34.

legione una. *I.e.* the seventh. Cp. III. 7, 2.

Curiosolitas. The accusative from *Curiosolites*, formed after the analogy of Greek plurals in *-es*. So Caesar uses *Allobrogas* from *Allobroges*, I. 14, 2, *Lingonas* from *Lingones*, I. 26, 6.

35.

1. **hujus belli** [§ 132] **opinio.** "Fame of this war." Cp. 8, 1.

qui se obsides daturas pollicerentur. *Daturas* is here feminine, agreeing with *se*, which refers to *nationibus*. *Se* is used here because *ab iis nationibus*, though not the grammatical subject of the main sentence, is equivalent in meaning to a subject; *ab iis nationibus mitterentur legati* being equivalent to *eae nationes mitterent legatos*. Cp. 30, 3, and note on *Se and Suus*, III.

2. **inita aestate.** See on 2, 1.

in Italiam Illyricumque properabat. Illyricum (see *Geographical Index*) was assigned to Caesar with Cisalpine Gaul as his province, in B.C. 59, for five years, by the *Lex Vatinia;* the senate afterwards adding Transalpine Gaul also for five years. It was during this visit of Caesar's to Italy, in the spring of B.C. 56, that the celebrated meeting took place at Luca in Etruria between Caesar, Pompeius, and Crassus. The agreement between this triumvirate was there renewed, by virtue of which Caesar's command in Gaul, which would naturally have terminated in B.C. 54, was prolonged for another five years. By *Italiam* Caesar seems to mean Cisalpine Gaul, as in I. 10, 3. See *Introduction*, § 2 (1).

3. **hibernacula.** "The winter huts" or "tents" of the army; *hiberna*, "the winter quarters" generally.

4. **supplicatio.** A solemn supplication to the gods decreed by the Roman senate, to thank them for good or to pray them to avert evil fortune. On the receipt of the news of a victory such a *supplicatio* was often decreed: the number of days devoted to it varied. In older times it sometimes lasted only one day,

sometimes for as many as five. At this time Caesar obtained a *supplicatio* lasting for the unprecedented space of fifteen days. Later a *supplicatio* was decreed in his name, to last for twenty days, in consequence of his first invasion of Britain and his passage of the Rhine (IV. 38), and again for his defeat of Vercingetorix (VII. 90). After this the senate often lengthened the time still further in its flattery of successful generals. The full formula was "*supplicatio nomine imperatoris dis immortalibus decreta est.*"

nulli. Notice the emphatic position in which *nulli* is placed at the end of the sentence. Cp. 6, 3.

BOOK III.

Campaign of Galba against the Alpine Tribes. B.C. 56.

Galba, sent by Caesar to keep open the Great St. Bernard Pass, takes up his winter quarters at Octodurus, where the Gauls determine to attack him.

1. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legione XII et parte equitatus in Nantuatis, Veragros Sedunosque misit, qui ab finibus Allobrogum et lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano ad summas Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit, quod iter per Alpes, 2 quo magno cum periculo magnisque cum portoriis mercatores ire consuerant, patefieri volebat. Huic permisit, 3 si opus esse arbitraretur, uti in his locis legionem hiemandi causa collocaret. Galba secundis aliquot proeliis 4 factis castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis missis ad eum undique legatis obsidibusque datis et pace facta constituit cohortes duas in Nantuatibus collocare et ipse cum reliquis ejus legionis cohortibus in vico Veragrorum, qui appellatur Octodurus, hiemare; qui vicus positus 5 in valle non magna adjecta planicie altissimis montibus undique continetur. Cum hic in duas partes flumine 6 divideretur, alteram partem ejus vici Gallis [ad hiemandum] concessit, alteram vacuam ab his relictam cohortibus attribuit.

2. Eum locum vallo fossaque munivit. Cum dies hibernorum complures transissent, frumentumque eo comportari jussisset, subito per exploratores certior factus est ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat,

omnes noctu discessisse montesque, qui impenderent, a maxima multitudine Sedunorum et Veragrorum teneri.
2 Id aliquot de causis acciderat, ut subito Galli belli renovandi legionisque opprimendae consilium caperent:
3 primum, quod legionem neque eam plenissimam detractis cohortibus duabus et compluribus singillatim, qui commeatus petendi causa missi erant, propter paucitatem
4 despiciebant; tum etiam, quod propter iniquitatem loci, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem decurrerent et tela conjicerent, ne primum quidem posse impetum suum sus-
5 tineri existimabant. Accedebat, quod suos ab se liberos abstractos obsidum nomine dolebant, et Romanos non solum itinerum causa, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis culmina Alpium occupare conari et ea loca finitimae provinciae adjungere sibi persuasum habebant.

Galba calls a council of war, which decides to defend the camp.

3. His nuntiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hibernorum munitionesque plene essent perfectae, neque de frumento reliquoque commeatu satis esset provisum, quod deditione facta obsidibusque acceptis nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter convocato
2 sententias exquirere coepit. Quo in consilio, cum tantum repentini periculi praeter opinionem accidisset, ac jam omnia fere superiora loca multitudine armatorum completa conspicerentur, neque subsidio veniri neque commeatus supportari interclusis itineribus possent, prope jam desperata salute nonnullae hujusmodi sententiae dicebantur, ut impedimentis relictis eruptione facta isdem itineribus, quibus eo pervenissent, ad salu-
3 tem contenderent. Majori tamen parti placuit hoc reservato ad extremum consilio interim rei eventum experiri et castra defendere.

Attack by the Gauls: fierce fighting: final victory of the Romans, though Galba changes his winter quarters to the country of the Allobroges.

4. Brevi spatio interjecto, vix ut rebus, quas consti-

tuissent, collocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur, hostes ex omnibus partibus signo dato decurrere, lapides gaesaque in vallum conjicere. Nostri primo 2 integris viribus fortiter repugnare neque ullum frustra telum ex loco superiore mittere, ut quaeque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurrere et auxilium ferre, sed hoc superari, quod diuturnitate 3 pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant, quarum rerum a nostris propter 4 paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac non modo defesso ex pugna excedendi, sed ne saucio quidem ejus loci, ubi constiterat, relinquendi ac sui recipiendi facultas dabatur.

5. Cum jam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur ac non solum vires, sed etiam tela nostros deficerent atque hostes acrius instarent languidioribusque nostris vallum scindere et fossas complere coepissent, resque esset jam ad extremum perducta casum, Publius Sextius 2 Baculus, primi pili centurio, quem Nervico proelio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item Gaius Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione facta extremum auxilium experirentur. Itaque convocatis centurionibus celeriter 3 milites certiores facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tela missa exciperent seque ex labore reficerent, post dato signo ex castris erumperent atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponerent.

6. Quod jussi sunt, faciunt ac subito omnibus portis eruptione facta neque cognoscendi, quid fieret, neque sui colligendi hostibus facultatem relinquunt. Ita com- 2 mutata fortuna eos, qui in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant, undique circumventos interficiunt et ex hominum milibus amplius XXX, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat, plus tertia parte interfecta reliquos perterritos in fugam conjiciunt ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus 3 hostium copiis fusis armisque exutis se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. Quo proelio facto, quod 4

saepius fortunam temptare Galba nolebat atque alio se in hiberna consilio venisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rebus viderat, maxime frumenti commeatusque inopia permotus postero die omnibus ejus vici aedificiis incensis in provinciam reverti contendit ac nullo hoste prohibente aut iter demorante incolumem legionem in Nantuatis, inde in Allobroges perduxit ibique hiemavit.

Caesar's Campaign against the Veneti.
B.C. 56.

The Veneti and the neighbouring tribes arrest certain Roman ambassadors.

7. His rebus gestis cum omnibus de causis Caesar pacatam Galliam existimaret, superatis Belgis, expulsis Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedunis, atque ita inita hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes adire et regiones cognoscere volebat, subitum 2 bellum in Gallia coortum est. Ejus belli haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulescens cum legione septima 3 proximus mare Oceanum in Andibus hiemarat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frumenti erat, praefectos tribunosque militum complures in finitimas civitates frumenti 4 causa dimisit; quo in numero est T. Terrasidius missus in Esubios, M. Trebius Gallus in Curiosolitas, Q. Velanius cum T. Silio in Venetos.

8. Hujus est civitatis longe amplissima auctoritas omnis orae maritimae regionum earum, quod et naves habent Veneti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt, et scientia atque usu nauticarum rerum reliquos antecedunt et in magno impetu maris atque aperto paucis portibus interjectis, quos tenent ipsi, omnes fere, qui eo mari uti consuerunt, habent vecti- 2 gales. Ab his fit initium retinendi Silii atque Velanii, quod per eos suos se obsides, quos Crasso dedissent, 3 reciperaturos existimabant. Horum auctoritate finitimi adducti (ut sunt Gallorum subita et repentina consilia), eadem de causa Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et

celeriter missis legatis per suos principes inter se conjurant, nihil nisi communi consilio acturos eundemque omnis fortunae exitum esse laturos, reliquasque civitates 4 sollicitant, ut in ea libertate quam a majoribus acceperant, permanere quam Romanorum servitutem perferre mallent. Omni ora maritima celeriter ad suam sen- 5 tentiam perducta communem legationem ad P. Crassum mittunt, si velit suos recipere, obsides sibi remittat.

Caesar prepares a fleet to act against the Veneti. They invite allies to join them, and obtain aid from Britain.

9. Quibus de rebus Caesar ab Crasso certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, navis interim longas aedificari in flumine Ligere, quod influit in Oceanum, remiges ex provincia institui, nautas gubernatoresque comparari jubet. His rebus celeriter administratis ipse, cum pri- 2 mum per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Veneti reliquaeque item civitates cognito Caesaris ad- 3 ventu, simul quod, quantum in se facinus admisissent, intellegebant, legatos, quod nomen ad omnes nationes sanctum inviolatumque semper fuisset, retentos ab se et in vincula conjectos, pro magnitudine periculi bellum parare et maxime ea, quae ad usum navium pertinent, providere instituunt, hoc majore spe, quod multum natura loci confidebant. Pedestria esse itinera concisa 4 aestuariis, navigationem impeditam propter inscientiam locorum paucitatemque portuum sciebant, neque nostros 5 exercitus propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud se morari posse confidebant: ac jam ut omnia contra 6 opinionem acciderent, tamen se plurimum navibus posse, Romanos neque ullam facultatem habere navium neque eorum locorum, ubi bellum gesturi essent, vada, portus, insulas novisse; ac longe aliam esse 7 navigationem in concluso mari atque in vastissimo atque apertissimo Oceano perspiciebant. His initis 8 consiliis oppida muniunt, frumenta ex agris in oppida comportant, naves in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum 9 bellum gesturum constabat, quam plurimas possunt,

10 cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osismos, Lexovios, Namnetes, Ambiliatos, Morinos, Diablintes, Menapios adsciscunt; auxilia ex Britannia, quae contra eas regiones posita est, arcessunt.

Caesar divides his forces under his various "legati," to prevent other Gauls from joining in the attack.

10. Erant hae difficultates belli gerendi, quas supra ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum 2 incitabant: injuriae retentorum equitum Romanorum, rebellio facta post deditionem, defectio datis obsidibus, tot civitatum conjuratio, imprimis, ne hac parte neglecta 3 reliquae nationes sibi idem licere arbitrarentur. Itaque cum intellegeret omnes fere Gallos novis rebus studere et ad bellum mobiliter celeriterque excitari, omnes autem homines natura libertati studere et condicionem servitutis odisse, priusquam plures civitates conspirarent, partiendum sibi ac latius distribuendum exercitum putavit.

11. Itaque T. Labienum legatum in Treveros, qui 2 proximi flumini Rheno sunt, cum equitatu mittit. Huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat atque in officio contineat Germanosque, qui auxilio a Belgis arcessiti dicebantur, si per vim navibus flumen transire conentur, 3 prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis XII et magno numero equitatus in Aquitaniam proficisci jubet, ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur 4 ac tantae nationes conjungantur. Q. Titurium Sabinum legatum cum legionibus tribus in Venellos, Curiosolites Lexoviosque mittit, qui eam manum distinendam curet. 5 Decimum Brutum adulescentem classi Gallicisque navibus, quas ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pacatis regionibus convenire jusserat, praeficit et, cum primum posset, in Venetos proficisci jubet. Ipse eo pedestribus copiis contendit.

The enemy's towns are situated on small promontories and islands, and are therefore difficult to reach owing to the tides.

12. Erant ejusmodi fere situs oppidorum, ut posita

in extremis lingulis promunturiisque neque pedibus aditum haberent, cum ex alto se aestus incitavisset, quod bis accidit semper horarum XXIIII spatio, neque navibus, quod rursus minuente aestu naves in vadis afflictarentur. Ita utraque re oppidorum oppugnatio impediebatur; 2 ac si quando magnitudine operis forte superati, extruso 3 mari aggere ac molibus atque his oppidi moenibus adaequatis, suis fortunis desperare coeperant, magno numero navium appulso, cujus rei summam facultatem habebant, sua deportabant omnia seque in proxima oppida recipiebant: ibi se rursus isdem opportunitatibus 4 loci defendebant. Haec eo facilius magnam partem 5 aestatis faciebant, quod nostrae naves tempestatibus detinebantur, summaque erat vasto atque aperto mari, magnis aestibus, raris ac prope nullis portibus, difficultas navigandi.

Description of the ships and naval tactics of the enemy.

13. Namque ipsorum naves ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant: carinae aliquanto planiores quam nostrarum navium, quo facilius vada ac decessum aestus excipere possent; prorae admodum erectae atque item 2 puppes ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatae, naves totae factae ex robore ad quamvis 3 vim et contumeliam perferendam; transtra pedalibus in 4 altitudinem trabibus confixa clavis ferreis digiti pollicis crassitudine; ancorae pro funibus ferreis catenis re- 5 vinctae: pelles pro velis alutaeque tenuiter confectae, 6 hae sive propter lini inopiam atque ejus usus inscientiam, sive eo, quod est magis verisimile, quod tantas tempestates Oceani tantosque impetus ventorum sustineri ac tanta onera navium regi velis non satis commode posse arbitrabantur. Cum his navibus nostrae classi 7 ejusmodi congressus erat, ut una celeritate et pulsu remorum praestaret, reliqua pro loci natura, pro vi tempestatum illis essent aptiora et accommodatiora. Neque enim his nostrae rostro nocere poterant (tanta in 8 iis erat firmitudo), neque propter altitudinem facile

telum adigebatur, et eadem de causa minus commode 9 copulis continebantur. Accedebat, ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et se vento dedissent, et tempestatem ferrent facilius et in vadis consisterent tutius, et ab aestu relictae nihil saxa et cautes timerent; quarum rerum omnium nostris navibus casus erat extimescendus.

A naval battle, in which the Roman ships specially adapted for the occasion are completely victorious.

14. Compluribus expugnatis oppidis Caesar, ubi intellexit frustra tantum laborem sumi, neque hostium fugam captis oppidis reprimi neque iis noceri posse, 2 statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convenit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter CCXX naves eorum paratissimae atque omni genere armorum ornatissimae 3 profectae ex portu nostris adversae constiterunt; neque satis Bruto, qui classi praeerat, vel tribunis militum centurionibusque, quibus singulae naves erant attributae, constabat, quid agerent aut quam rationem pugnae 4 insisterent. Rostro enim noceri non posse cognoverant: turribus autem excitatis tamen has altitudo puppium ex barbaris navibus superabat, ut neque ex inferiore loco satis commode tela adigi possent et missa ab Gallis 5 gravius acciderent. Una erat magno usui res praeparata a nostris, falces praeacutae insertae affixaeque longuriis 6 non absimili forma muralium falcium. His cum funes, qui antemnas ad malos destinabant, comprehensi adductique erant, navigio remis incitato praerumpebantur. 7 Quibus abscisis antemnae concidebant, ut, cum omnis Gallicis navibus spes in velis armamentisque consisteret, his ereptis omnis usus navium uno tempore eriperetur. 8 Reliquum erat certamen positum in virtute, qua nostri milites facile superabant atque eo magis, quod in conspectu Caesaris atque omnis exercitus res gerebatur, ut 9 nullum paulo fortius factum latere posset; omnes enim colles ac loca superiora, unde erat propinquus despectus in mare, ab exercitu tenebantur.

15. Disjectis, ut diximus, antemnis, cum singulas

binae ac ternae naves circumsteterant, milites summa vi transcendere in hostium naves contendebant. Quod 2 postquam barbari fieri animadverterunt, expugnatis compluribus navibus, cum ei rei nullum reperiretur auxilium, fuga salutem petere contenderunt. Ac jam 3 conversis in eam partem navibus, quo ventus ferebat, tanta subito malacia ac tranquillitas exstitit, ut se ex loco commovere non possent. Quae quidem res ad 4 negotium conficiendum maxime fuit opportuna: nam 5 singulas nostri consectati expugnaverunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numero noctis interventu ad terram pervenerint, cum ab hora fere quarta usque ad solis occasum pugnaretur.

Surrender and punishment of the Veneti.

16. Quo proelio bellum Venetorum totiusque orae maritimae confectum est. Nam cum omnis juventus, 2 omnes etiam gravioris aetatis, in quibus aliquid consilii aut dignitatis fuit, eo convenerant, tum navium quod ubique fuerat in unum locum coëgerant; quibus amissis 3 reliqui neque quo se reciperent, neque quemadmodum oppida defenderent, habebant. Itaque se suaque omnia 4 Caesari dediderunt. In quos eo gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quo diligentius in reliquum tempus a barbaris jus legatorum conservaretur. Itaque omni senatu necato reliquos sub corona vendidit.

Campaign of Sabinus against the Venelli.
B.C. 56.

Sabinus, confronted by the hostile forces of Viridovix, declines to march out from his camp.

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titurius Sabinus cum iis copiis, quas a Caesare acceperat, in fines Venellorum pervenit. His praeerat Viridovix ac 2 summam imperii tenebat earum omnium civitatum, quae defecerant, ex quibus exercitum magnasque copias coëgerat; atque his paucis diebus Aulerci Eburovices 3 Lexoviique senatu suo interfecto, quod auctores belli

esse nolebant, portas clauserunt seque cum Viridovice
4 conjunxerunt: magnaque praeterea multitudo undique
ex Gallia perditorum hominum latronumque convenerat,
quos spes praedandi studiumque bellandi ab agricultura
5 et cotidiano labore revocabat. Sabinus idoneo omnibus
rebus loco castris sese tenebat; cum Viridovix
contra eum duum milium spatio consedisset cotidieque
productis copiis pugnandi potestatem faceret, ut jam
non solum hostibus in contemptionem Sabinus veniret,
sed etiam nostrorum militum vocibus nonnihil car-
6 peretur; tantamque opinionem timoris praebuit, ut jam
7 ad vallum castrorum hostes accedere auderent. Id ea
de causa faciebat, quod cum tanta multitudine hostium,
praesertim eo absente, qui summam imperii teneret, nisi
aequo loco aut opportunitate aliqua data legato dimicandum
non existimabat.

His scheme for persuading the enemy to attack his camp succeeds. They are routed, and surrender.

18. Hac confirmata opinione timoris idoneum quendam
hominem et callidum delegit, Gallum, ex iis, quos
2 auxilii causa secum habebat. Huic magnis praemiis
pollicitationibusque persuadet, uti ad hostes transeat,
3 et, quid fieri velit, edocet. Qui ubi pro perfuga ad eos
venit, timorem Romanorum proponit, quibus angustiis
4 ipse Caesar a Venetis prematur, docet, neque longius
abesse, quin proxima nocte Sabinus clam ex castris
exercitum educat et ad Caesarem auxilii ferendi causa
5 proficiscatur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclamant omnes
occasionem negotii bene gerendi amittendam non esse:
6 ad castra ire oportere. Multae res ad hoc consilium
Gallos hortabantur; superiorum dierum Sabini cunctatio,
perfugae confirmatio, inopia cibariorum, cui rei parum
diligenter ab iis erat provisum, spes Venetici belli et
quod fere libenter homines id, quod volunt, credunt.
7 His rebus adducti non prius Viridovicem reliquosque
duces ex concilio dimittunt, quam ab his sit concessum,
8 arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. Qua re con-

cessa laeti, ut explorata victoria, sarmentis virgultisque collectis, quibus fossas Romanorum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

19. Locus erat castrorum editus et paulatim ab imo acclivis circiter passus mille. Huc magno cursu contenderunt, ut quam minimum spatii ad se colligendos armandosque Romanis daretur, exanimatique pervenerunt. Sabinus suos hortatus cupientibus signum dat. 2 Impeditis hostibus propter ea, quae ferebant, onera subito duabus portis eruptionem fieri jubet. Factum 3 est opportunitate loci, hostium inscientia ac defetigatione, virtute militum et superiorum pugnarum exercitatione, ut ne unum quidem nostrorum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quos impeditos integris 4 viribus milites nostri consecuti magnum numerum eorum occiderunt; reliquos equites consectati paucos, qui ex fuga evaserant, reliquerunt. Sic uno tempore et de 5 navali pugna Sabinus et de Sabini victoria Caesar certior factus est, civitatesque omnes se statim Titurio dediderunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallorum alacer 6 ac promptus est animus, sic mollis ac minime resistens ad calamitates perferendas mens eorum est.

Expedition of Crassus into Aquitania.

Crassus marches against the Sontiates, who attack him from ambuscades: after fierce fighting they are defeated. Their chief town is stormed, and they surrender.

20. Eodem fere tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquitaniam pervenisset, quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regionum latitudine et multitudine hominum ex tertia parte Galliae est aestimanda, cum intellegeret, in iis locis sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucis ante annis L. Valerius Praeconinus legatus exercitu pulso interfectus esset, atque unde L. Mallius proconsul impedimentis amissis profugisset, non mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intellegebat. Itaque re frumentaria pro- 2 visa, auxiliis equitatuque comparato, multis praeterea

viris fortibus Tolosa et Narbone, quae sunt civitates Galliae provinciae finitimae his regionibus, nominatim evocatis in Sontiatum fines exercitum introduxit.
3 Cujus adventu cognito Sontiates magnis copiis coactis equitatuque, quo plurimum valebant, in itinere agmen nostrum adorti primum equestre proelium commiserunt,
4 deinde equitatu suo pulso atque insequentibus nostris subito pedestres copias, quas in convalle in insidiis collocaverant, ostenderunt. Hi nostros disjectos adorti proelium renovarunt.

21. Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, cum Sontiates superioribus victoriis freti in sua virtute totius Aquitaniae salutem positam putarent, nostri autem, quid sine imperatore et sine reliquis legionibus adulescentulo duce efficere possent, perspici cuperent: tandem con-
2 fecti vulneribus hostes terga vertere. Quorum magno numero interfecto Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sontiatum oppugnare coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vineas
3 turresque egit. Illi alias eruptione temptata, alias cuniculis ad aggerem vineasque actis (cujus rei sunt longe peritissimi Aquitani, propterea quod multis locis apud eos aerariae structurae sunt), ubi diligentia nostrorum nihil his rebus profici posse intellexerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittunt seque in deditionem ut recipiat, petunt. Qua re impetrata arma tradere jussi faciunt.

Sortie of Adiatunnus and his "soldurii:" these are repulsed, and surrender.

22. Atque in ea re omnium nostrorum intentis animis alia ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, qui summam imperii tenebat, cum DC devotis, quos illi soldurios
2 appellant, quorum haec est condicio, uti omnibus in vita commodis una cum iis fruantur, quorum se amicitiae dediderint, si quid his per vim accidat, aut eundem casum una ferant aut sibi mortem consciscant;
3 neque adhuc hominum memoria repertus est quisquam, qui eo interfecto, cujus se amicitiae devovisset, mori

recusaret: cum his Adiatunnus eruptionem facere 4 conatus clamore ab ea parte munitionis sublato, cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, uti eadem deditionis condicione uteretur, ab Crasso impetravit.

In the country of the Vocates and the Tarusates Crassus is met by a fresh confederate force; he attacks it, and captures the camp. The victory is followed bv the surrender of the chief tribes of Aquitania.

23. Armis obsidibusque acceptis Crassus in fines Vocatium et Tarusatium profectus est. Tum vero 2 barbari commoti, quod oppidum et natura loci et manu munitum paucis diebus, quibus eo ventum erat, expugnatum cognoverant, legatos quoqueversum dimittere, conjurare, obsides inter se dare, copias parare coeperunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitates legati, quae sunt 3 citerioris Hispaniae finitimae Aquitaniae: inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur. Quorum adventu magna cum 4 auctoritate et magna cum hominum multitudine bellum gerere conantur. Duces vero ii deliguntur, qui una 5 cum Q. Sertorio omnes annos fuerant summamque scientiam rei militaris habere existimabantur. Hi con- 6 suetudine populi Romani loca capere, castra munire, commeatibus nostros intercludere instituunt. Quod ubi 7 Crassus animadvertit, suas copias propter exiguitatem non facile diduci, hostem et vagari et vias obsidere et castris satis praesidii relinquere, ob eam causam minus commode frumentum commeatumque sibi supportari, in dies hostium numerum augeri, non cunctandum existimavit, quin pugna decertaret.

24. Hac re ad consilium delata ubi omnes idem sentire intellexit, posterum diem pugnae constituit. Prima luce productis omnibus copiis duplici acie instituta, auxiliis in mediam aciem conjectis, quid hostes consilii caperent, exspectabat. Illi, etsi propter mul- 2 titudinem et veterem belli gloriam paucitatemque nostrorum se tuto dimicaturos existimabant, tamen

tutius esse arbitrabantur obsessis viis commeatu inter-
3 cluso sine ullo vulnere victoria potiri et, si propter
inopiam rei frumentariae Romani sese recipere coepissent,
impeditos in agmine et sub sarcinis infirmiore animo
4 adoriri cogitabant. Hoc consilio probato ab ducibus
5 productis Romanorum copiis sese castris tenebant. Hac
re perspecta Crassus, cum sua cunctatione atque opinione
timoris hostes nostros milites alacriores ad pugnandum
effecissent, atque omnium voces audirentur, exspectari
diutius non oportere, quin ad castra iretur, cohortatus
suos omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cum alii fossas complerent, alii multis telis
conjectis defensores vallo munitionibusque depellerent,
auxiliaresque, quibus ad pugnam non multum Crassus
confidebat, lapidibus telisque subministrandis et ad
aggerem cespitibus comportandis speciem atque opini-
onem pugnantium praeberent, cum item ab hostibus
constanter ac non timide pugnaretur telaque ex loco
2 superiore missa non frustra acciderent, equites circumitis
hostium castris Crasso renuntiaverunt non eadem esse
diligentia ab decumana porta castra munita facilemque
aditum habere.

26. Crassus equitum praefectos cohortatus, ut magnis
praemiis pollicitationibusque suos excitarent, quid fieri
2 velit, ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperatum, eductis iis
cohortibus, quae praesidio castris relictae intritae ab
labore erant, et longiore itinere circumductis, ne ex
hostium castris conspici possent, omnium oculis menti-
busque ad pugnam intentis celeriter ad eas, quas diximus,
3 munitiones pervenerunt atque his prorutis prius in
hostium castris constiterunt, quam plane ab his videri
4 aut, quid rei gereretur, cognosci posset. Tum vero
clamore ab ea parte audito nostri redintegratis viribus,
quod plerumque in spe victoriae accidere consuevit,
5 acrius impugnare coeperunt. Hostes undique circum-
venti desperatis omnibus rebus se per munitiones dejicere
6 et fuga salutem petere intenderunt. Quos equitatus
apertissimis campis consectatus ex milium L numero,

quae ex Aquitania Cantabrisque convenisse constabat, vix quarta parte relicta multa nocte se in castra recipit.

27. Hac audita pugna maxima pars Aquitaniae sese Crasso dedidit obsidesque ultro misit; quo in numero fuerunt Tarbelli, Bigerriones, Ptianii, Vocates, Tarusates, Elusates, Gates, Ausci, Garumni, Sibuzates, Cocosates: paucae ultimae nationes anni tempore confisae, quod 2 hiems suberat, hoc facere neglexerunt.

Expedition of Caesar against the Morini and Menapii, who retire to their marshes: his further operations being interrupted by the weather, he withdraws to his winter quarters.

28. Eodem fere tempore Caesar, etsi prope exacta jam aestas erat, tamen, quod omni Gallia pacata Morini Menapiique supererant, qui in armis essent neque ad eum umquam legatos de pace misissent, arbitratus id bellum celeriter confici posse eo exercitum adduxit; qui longe alia ratione ac reliqui Galli bellum gerere coeperunt. Nam quod intellegebant maximas nationes, quae 2 proelio contendissent, pulsas superatasque esse, continentesque silvas ac paludes habebant, eo se suaque omnia contulerunt. Ad quarum initium silvarum cum Caesar 3 pervenisset castraque munire instituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris subito ex omnibus partibus silvae evolaverunt et in nostros impetum fecerunt. Nostri celeriter arma ceperunt eosque in 4 silvas repulerunt et compluribus interfectis longius impeditioribus locis secuti paucos ex suis deperdiderunt.

29. Reliquis deinceps diebus Caesar silvas caedere instituit, et ne quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocabat et pro vallo ad utrumque latus exstruebat. Incredibili 2 celeritate magno spatio paucis diebus confecto, cum jam pecus atque extrema impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, ipsi densiores silvas peterent, ejusmodi sunt tempestates consecutae, uti opus necessario intermitteretur

et continuatione imbrium diutius sub pellibus milites
3 contineri non possent. Itaque vastatis omnibus eorum agris, vicis aedificiisque incensis Caesar exercitum reduxit et in Aulercis Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatibus, quae proxime bellum fecerant, in hibernis collocavit.

NOTES TO BOOK III.

1.

1. **Cum in Italiam proficisceretur.** *I.e.* at the end of the campaign of B.C. 57. See note on II. 35, 2.

pertinent. "Extend." Cp. I. 1, 6.

2. **iter per Alpes.** This route was the same as the modern Great St. Bernard Pass.

magno cum periculo. "Not without great danger." *Cum* is not uncommonly used in expressions which come under the general notion of manner or attendant circumstances. [N. S. V. *B.* p. 136.]

magnis cum portoriis. By *portoria* are meant the dues on the carriage of goods, either imported or exported. See on I. 18, 2. Translate, "The route by which the traders were accustomed to travel, with great danger to themselves, and at the cost of heavy custom dues."

patefieri. When compounded with prepositions *facio* becomes *-ficio*, and forms its passive in *-ficior* (*conficio*, *conficior*) when compounded with adverbs (*e.g. satis*, *bene*) or verb stems (*e.g. pate*, stem of *patere*, *cale*, stem of *calere*) it remains unaltered in the active, and forms its passive in *fio* (*patefacio*, *patefio*). This rule, however, has its exceptions: thus *confieri* and *defieri* are found as well as *confici*, *defici*.

3. **Huic.** [§ 106 (3).]

opus esse. See note on I. 34, 2.

4. **missis ad eum undique legatis—constituit cohortes—collocare.** Caesar here uses *eum*, referring to the nominative of the main verb *constituit*, though, according to the regular usage, we should have expected *se*. See note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*d*) and IV. In III. 8, 5, we find *omni ora maritima —ad* suam *sententiam perducta—legationem ad P. Crassum mittunt.* There is, however, an important difference between the two, which will suggest the reason of Caesar's using *eum* in the present passage. In the latter passage *suam* refers

to the logical subject implied in *perducta*, which is the same as the subject of *mittunt*. "When they had brought over to their own opinions." In the present passage the logical subject implied in *missis* is not the same as the subject of *constituit*.

5. **vicus.** "A hamlet," "a collection of houses." See note on I. 5, 2.

non magna adjecta planicie. "With a plain of no great size lying close to it." [§ 125.]

continetur. "Is shut in."

6. **flumine.** The river now called the Drance, which joins the Rhone close to Martigny (*Octodurus*).

[ad hiemandum]. These words Kraner considers to be out of place, since the Gauls mentioned here were not under arms, but were the ordinary inhabitants of the country. He suggests that the words may have been inserted here erroneously from the next clause, which should then be written *cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit*.

2.

1. **vallo fossaque.** See note on *Army*, § 10.

Cum dies hibernorum complures transissent. "When many days of their wintering had passed." *Hiberna*, literally "winter quarters."

per exploratores. See on I. 3, 6; and note on *Army*, § 4.

a maxima multitudine. An ablative of the agent: for *multitudo* = "a number of men." Sometimes the ablative of the instrument without *a* is used with this and similar words.

2. **belli renovandi.** [§ 132.]

ut caperent. A clause explaining and defining *id*. See note on I. 5, 1.

3. **neque eam plenissimam.** "And that, moreover, one which had not its full strength."

detractis cohortibus duabus. [§ 125.] The two cohorts mentioned in 1, 4.

et compluribus singillatim. Understand again *detractis*. "As many of the men were away by themselves," *i.e.* not in detachments, but scattered about the country separately.

5. **Accedebat, quod.** Lit. "it was added that they lamented." Translate, "Besides this they lamented."

ab se. "From themselves."

obsidum nomine. "Under the name of hostages." [§ 113.] For the facts, and the justification which the Gauls had for opposing the Roman army, see note on **10**, 3.

possessio. "Occupation," usually of land. Cp. I. 11, 5.

finitimae provinciae. [§ 106, 4, *a.*]

sibi persuasum habebant. "Were persuaded." *Sibi* dative after the impersonal participle *persuasum.* For the periphrasis with *habeo* as an auxiliary verb, see note on II. **4**, 4.

3.

1. **opus hibernorum munitionesque.** "The construction of the winter quarters (generally), and (as a special point) the building of the fortifications." See note on *que* explanatory, I. **27**, 4. For *opus* used of military works, cp. II. **20**, 1.

frumento reliquoque commeatu. See note on I. **39**, 1.

quod—existimaverat. These words give the reason for the neglect of the precautions mentioned in the preceding sentence.

2. **repentini periculi.** [§ 131.]

multitudine. [§ 119, *b.*]

superiora loca. "Higher ground."

neque subsidio veniri. Sc. *posset*, from the *possent* in the next sentence. For the use of the passive of a neuter verb as an impersonal, see [N. S. IX. *F. b*, p. 145]. *Subsidio* is the "dative of the purpose" [§ 108, III.], as it is commonly used with the active voice (*subsidio venire, B. G.* V. 27, 5). Translate, "Nor was there a possibility of coming up as a reinforcement," "nor could reinforcements come up."

impedimentis relictis eruptione facta. See note on I. **24**, 3.

isdem itineribus. [§ 121.] See on I. **31**, 1, *idem.*

ad salutem. "To a place of safety."

3. **Majori parti.** [§ 106 (3).]

4.

1. **vix ut rebus—collocandis et administrandis tempus daretur.** "Scarcely enough to allow of time being

given to arrange (set in place) and carry out the plans." See note on I. 6, 1.

hostes decurrere. Historical infinitive. [§ 140, 2.]

gaesa. A Celtic word for the long heavy javelins used by the Gauls.

2. **ex loco superiore.** "From the higher ground," their post of vantage, *i.e.* the *vallum* mentioned in 2, 1.

nudata defensoribus. [§ 119, *b.*]

3. **integris viribus.** [§ 115.]

succedebant. "Came up to supply their place." So *sub* in composition often. See note on I. 40, 11.

4. **ac non modo defesso—sed ne saucio quidem—facultas dabatur.** *Non modo* here is equivalent to *non modo non.* "If a predicate or other word is common to both clauses, but stands with the latter, the *non* after *modo* (or *solum*) is frequently omitted" (Roby, § 2240). Here the words common to both clauses are *facultas dabatur.*

sui recipiendi. There are two points noticeable about this expression—

(*a*) The reflexive pronoun is used here with the gerundive in the same way as it is with the infinitive (*se recipere*), when referring to the subject of the verb infinite. *Sui recipiendi facultas,* "the power of retracing their own footsteps." So in 19, 1. See note on *Se and Suus,* I. (*b*).

(*b*) Although *sui* is used to express a plural notion, *i.e.* refers to more persons than one, the gerundive remains in the singular number. The probable explanation of this is, that, as at a comparatively early period in the history of Latin, the true genitives of *me, te, se* (cp. Roby, § 386) disappeared altogether from use, their places were filled by the neuter singulars of the possessive pronouns of *meus, tuus, suus* (*mei, tui, sui*), *sui* being used both for the singular and plural genitive. Hence *sui* being always grammatically a neuter singular, even when speaking of more persons than one, requires the gerundive to be neuter singular as well. Cp. Roby, §§ 386, 1312; Madv. §§ 85, 297 *b*, 417. Cp. *sui colligendi,* 6, 1; *B. G.* VI. 9, 6, *purgandi sui causa*

legatos mittunt. We may compare the English duplicated genitive, "that hat of his," "this book of mine," "a servant of my mother's."

5.

1. **nostros deficerent.** See note on II. 10, 4.

languidioribusque nostris. [§ 125, *a.*]

2. **primi pili centurio.** Cp. II. 25, 1. See note on *Army*, § 5 (*e*).

Nervico proelio. The great battle against the Nervii fought in the previous year, B.C. 57, the particulars of which are given in II. 19–28.

tribunus militum. See note on *Army*, § 5 (*d*).

consilii magni et virtutis. [§ 128.] *Magni*, though in sense applying to *consilii* and *virtutis*, is according to the rule expressed only once, and made to agree with the nearest noun, *consilii.* Cp. 8, 2.

si extremum auxilium experirentur. "If they were to make trial of their last resource." The imperfect subjunctive is used here because *docent*, on which it depends, is historical present. See note on *Reported Speech*, III. *note* (3).

3. **intermitterent.** See note on *Reported Speech*, II. (*c*).

exciperent tela missa. "Receive the missiles on their shields," *i.e.* ward off from themselves. Cp. *pila intercepta*, II. 27, 4.

6.

1. **Quod jussi sunt.** Sc. *facere.* "What they are ordered to do."

omnibus portis. [§ 121.]

fieret. [§ 149.]

sui colligendi. See note on 4, 4.

2. **potiundorum castrorum.** For the explanation of the use of the gerundive attraction in this verb instead of the gerund, see note on II. 7, 2.

milibus amplius triginta. [N. S. V. *K.* 2, p. 138.] See on I. 38, 5.

tertia parte. See note on I. 12, 2.

3. **copiis fusis armisque exutis.** *Exutis* agrees with *copiis, armis* being ablative after *exutis* [§ 119, 1]; for the ordinary construction of *exuere* is accusative of person, ablative of thing—*exuere hostem armis.* For a similar combination of ablatives, cp. I. 10, 5.

4. **atque alio se in hiberna—viderat.** "As he remembered that he had retired into winter quarters with one object, whilst he had found himself face to face with quite other conditions." The verbs *meminerat* and *viderat* are both dependent on *quod.* The omission of a conjunction (*asyndeton*), especially between two clauses each containing *alius,* is very common.

frumenti commeatusque. "Corn and other military supplies." See note on I. 39, 1.

reverti. *Revertor,* used here as a deponent verb in sense; lit. "I turn myself back," *i.e.* "I turn back." *Reverto* is used intransitively with the same meaning in II. 29, 1.

As to Caesar's historical accuracy in this section we must notice that he is evidently trying to excuse and minimise what was clearly failure and discomfiture on the part of his *legatus* Galba. So in I. 15, 2-4, he passes hurriedly over the successes of the Helvetii in a cavalry engagement against the Romans.

7.

1. **superatis Belgis, etc.** The conquest of the Belgae is recounted in II. 1–33, the expulsion from Gaul of the German tribes under Ariovistus in I. 30–54, and the defeat of the Seduni in 4–6.

inita hieme. See note on II. 2, 1.

eas nationes. The tribes of Illyricum.

2. **proximus mare Oceanum.** For the accusative with *proximus,* and its other constructions, see note on I. 1, 3. *Oceanum* in apposition to *mare.*

3. **praefectos tribunosque militum.** See note on *Army,* § 5 (*d*) and (*f*).

8.

1. **Hujus civitatis.** *I.e.* the state of the *Veneti*, the last people mentioned.

auctoritas omnis orae maritimae [§ 132] **regionum earum** [§ 130]. "Influence over all the sea coast in those parts."

scientia ac usu. "Technical knowledge and experience." See on II. **20**, 3.

reliquos antecedunt. [N. S. III. *B.* (3), p. 134.]

in magno impetu maris atque aperto. Lit. "in the great and open (*i.e.* unbroken) violence of the sea." Translate, "In a very rough and open sea." *Aperto* is explained by what follows: the sea is open, not shut up in bays, so that ships were compelled to put into the few ports, which belonged to the Veneti, in return for which they paid toll to the Veneti (*Veneti omnes habent vectigales*).

2. **Ab his fit initium retinendi Silii atque Velanii.** A compressed form of expression. "They begin the arrest of the ambassadors by seizing Silius and Velanius;" *retinendi* agreeing with the nearest substantive. Cp. **5**, 2.

Ab his. [§ 122, *b.*]

3. **ut sunt Gallorum subita et repentina consilia.** "Just as the plans of the Gauls are always rash and hasty;" "according to the usual rash haste of the Gauls."

per principes. See note on I. **3**, 6.

inter se conjurant—acturos. The subject to *acturos* is omitted, as obvious, and in order to avoid the awkward repetition of *se*. See on I. **7**, 3, *rogare*.

eundem omnis fortunae—laturos. "And would together bear the issue of whatever might befall them."

4. **quam a majoribus acceperant.** We might have expected *accepissent* here, as representing part of what was urged by the Veneti, and therefore as being in *oratio obliqua*. Caesar, however, by using the indicative, states rather the historical fact, apart from the representations of the Veneti.

mallent. Imperfect after the historical present *sollicitant*. See note on *Reported Speech*, III. *note* (3).

5. **ad suam sententiam.** *Suam* is used here, referring to the nominative of *mittunt*. See note on *Se and Suus*, II. (*d*)

but contrast 1, 4, and see note there, *missis ad* eum *undique legatis—constituit.*

remittat. See note on *Se and Suus,* II. (*c*).

9.

1. **navis longas.** "Ships of war," as being longer and narrower than the merchant ships (*naves onerariae*), for purposes of speed and manœuvring. So in Greek ναῦς μακρὰ, "a ship of war."

remiges. From *remex* (derived from *remus, ago*), an oarsman.

gubernatores. Closely connected with the Greek κυβερνήτης, it is used here in its original meaning of helmsman, pilot. Its subsequent meaning of "governor" is derived from this, as we speak of "guiding the helm of the state." For the *remiges* no specially skilled workers were required, so that they could be levied from the Province (*ex provincia institui*). The other sailors, to whom would belong the business of managing the sails, etc., and the helmsmen, required some trouble to get together (*comparari*).

2. **per anni tempus.** As soon as the time of the year allowed. See note on II. 16, 5.

3. **admisissent.** [§ 149.]

quod nomen fuisset. Explaining *legatos.* The whole sentence stands in a sort of apposition to the accusative *legatos, nomen* being attracted into the relative clause.

ad omnes nationes. "Amongst all nations;" lit. "looking to all nations."

fuisset. [§ 151.]

legatos retentos a se. These words explain the previous sentence, *quantum facinus admisissent,* being dependent upon *intellegebant.* Translate, "At the same time they understood the greatness of the crime that they had allowed themselves to commit, in that ambassadors (whose name had always been held sacred and inviolate amongst all nations) had been detained by them and thrown into chains."

hoc. "Owing to this," "on this account." [N. S. V. *E.* p. 137.]

4. **Pedestria itinera.** "The line of march for land forces."

aestuariis, See on II. 28, 1.

6. **ac jam ut.** "And moreover granted that—supposing that—" *Ut* concessive. [§ 152, I. (5).]

facultatem navium. See note on I. 38, 3.

7. **longe aliam—atque.** "Very different from." See note on II. 19, 2.

8. **frumenta.** Plural. "Growing corn." See note on I. 16, 2.

10. **auxilia ex Britannia.** Caesar mentioned the intercourse between Britain and the tribes of Belgic Gaul in II. 4, 7, 14, 4.

10.

2. **injuriae retentorum equitum Romanorum.** "The acts of injustice" (plural) "in detaining the Roman knights." Notice here the use of the passive participle to express the action of the verb, where the English would use the abstract substantive. Cp. *post conditam urbem,* "after the foundation of the city." See Roby, § 1406. *Equitum,* genitive defining *injuriae.* Cp. II. 33, 7; see Roby, § 1302.

This paragraph gives the explanation of the previous one. *Rebellio—defectio—conjuratio,* as well as the clause *ne—arbitrarentur,* are all subjects in apposition to *multa* in the preceding sentence, the conjunctions being omitted by the figure called asyndeton. For a similar construction, cp. 18, 6.

3. **novis rebus.** [§ 106 (3).] For the meaning of these words, see on I. 9, 3.

condicio. Derived from *con-dico;* the spelling *conditio* arose from a mistaken derivation of the word from *condo.*

priusquam conspirarent. [§ 152, III.]

sibi. [§ 144, *a.*]

In this chapter we may notice, that although Caesar is at some pains to explain the course he adopts as due to acts of injustice and rebellion, he cannot help admitting that the Gauls were fighting to maintain their freedom and to avoid slavery. So also I. 18, 4; II. 1, 3; 2, 5.

11.

1. **proximi flumini.** For the constructions of *proximus,* see note on I. 1, 3.

2. **adeat.** Present subjunctive after historical present, representing the imperative of *oratio recta.* See note on *Reported Speech,* II. (*c*), and III. *note* (3).

dicebantur. A parenthetical indicative, representing a statement of Caesar's, and not being part of the *oratio obliqua*. See note on I. 2, 4, *patebant*.

auxilio. [§ 108.]

arcessiti. [§ 94.]

3. **cohortes legionariae.** "Cohorts of legionary soldiers," as opposed to *cohortes alariae*, who were auxiliaries. See note on *Army*, § 2, (*a*).

4. **eam manum distinendam.** *I.e.* to keep away so that they should not join the Veneti.

5. **classi.** [§ 106, *a.*]

posset. Imperfect subjunctive, because it precedes the historical present *jubet*. See note on *Reported Speech*, III. *note* (3). See also on I. 7, 1.

pedestribus copiis. See note on I. 25, 5, *hominum milibus*.

12.

1. **lingulae.** Diminutive of *lingua* (see on I. 8, 2). "Tongues of land." Explained by the word *promunturiis*, which is coupled to it. For *que* explanatory, see note on I. 27, 4.

promunturiis. Derived from *prominere*; "jutting pieces of land," "promontories."

cum—se aestus incitavisset. "Whenever the tide had come in." See note on I. 25, 3, *cum inflexisset*.

quod bis accidit. *Quod*, neuter singular, agreeing with the preceding sentence. "A circumstance which takes place."

spatio. "Within the space of." [§ 120.]

afflictarentur. A conditional subjunctive [App. II., II. 1, C. p. 152]. "Because the ships *would be* grounded on the shoals."

2. **utraque re.** "By either circumstance," *i.e.* whether the tide were ebbing or flowing.

3. **magnitudine operis.** "By extensive fortification works." Explained by the words that follow. Cp. *opus* in this sense, 3, 1.

extruso mari [§ 125] aggere et molibus [§ 112]. Translate, "The sea being kept off by means of massive embankments." *Agger et moles*, a *hendiadys*; lit. "by an embankment -eat masses."

his (*i.e. aggere et molibus*) **adaequatis** (ablative absolute [§ 125]) **moenibus** (dative, closely dependent on *adaequatis* [§ 106, *a*]). Translate, "These embankments being built up to a level with the walls of the town."

suis fortunis desperare. Dative with *desperare* [§ 107], though the more common construction with this verb is an accusative.

appulso. "Being brought in to shore."

cujus rei. "Of which," *i.e.* of ships.

facultas. "Plenty." See note on I. 38, 3.

5. **vasto—mari, magnis aestibus, raris—portibus.** [§ 125, *a.*]

13.

1. **Namque.** Explaining why the Veneti themselves did not find the same difficulty as the Romans in sailing in these waters.

ipsorum. = *Venetorum.*

armatae. "Equipped." So *arma*, "equipment," "tackle." Cp. 14, 2.

quo facilius possent. [§ 150.]

excipere. Often used of *sustaining* an attack. Here the shallow water is regarded as the attacking enemy. Translate, "To meet the shallows and the ebb of the tide." Cp. *exciperent tela*, 5, 3.

3. **contumelia.** "Rough treatment;" lit. "insult."

4. **transtra crassitudine.** Translate, "The cross timbers, consisting of beams a foot thick, were fixed (to the ship) with bolts of iron as thick as a man's thumb." *Transtra* (*trans*), "cross beams of any kind;" often used of the thwarts on which the oarsmen sit. *Digitus pollex*, "the thumb," *digitus* being added to distinguish the thumb from the great toe, which is also called *pollex.*

pedalibus trabibus. [§ 119.]

crassitudine. [§ 116.]

digiti pollicis. For this genitive, dependent on *crassitudine*, see note on I. 8, 1.

6. **pelles alutaeque tenuiter confectae.** "Skins and leather worked thin."

hae. The pronoun is inserted for emphasis. "And these indeed."

ejus usus inscientiam. *Ejus* either depends on *usus* (sc. *lini*) or agrees with it. Translate, "Their ignorance of the use of it."

tanta onera navium. Lit. "such burdens consisting of ships," in the shape of ships, *i.e.* "such cumbrous ships."

velis. *I.e.* by the ordinary sails of canvas.

7. **nostrae classi.** [§ 107, *c.*]

ut una celeritate—praestaret. "So that our ships had the advantage in the one point of speed and rowing." [§ 111.] The ships of the Veneti were not rowed at all; cp. 14, 7; 15, 3.

8. **rostrum.** "The beak of a ship." Derived from *rodere*, "to gnaw."

copulae. "Grapnels." A general term for instruments used in grappling the enemy's ships, which was the chief object of Roman naval tactics. Elsewhere they are called *harpagones*, *corvi*, or *ferreae manus.*

9. **Accedebat ut—ferrent.** "Besides this they stood the storm more easily." See on 2, 5.

se vento dedissent. "Had run before the wind."

in vadis consisterent. "Rode in the shallows."

ab aestu relictae. "Left behind by the tide." Ablative of agent [§ 122, *b*]; *aestus* being here personified for grammatical purposes, the more naturally as it represents a moving active thing, which moved away from the ships. Cp. ROBY, § 1221. See note on *excipere* in section 1, where the sea is spoken of in a similar half-personal manner.

nostris navibus. [107, *d.*]

14.

1. **iis noceri posse.** [N. S. IX. *E. c.* p. 144.]

2. **arma.** "Tackle," "equipment." See on 13, 1.

3. **Bruto.** *I.e.* Decimus Brutus. See 11, 5.

classi. [§ 106, *a.*]

quid agerent. Dependent dubitative question. "What they were to do." [§ 149; App. II., II. 2, E. p. 153.]

insistere rationem. Lit. "to set your foot upon," *i.e.* "enter upon a plan," "to adopt a plan."

4. **Rostro.** [§ 112.]

turribus excitatis. [§ 125.] "Though towers were erected" (on board the ships).

ex barbaris navibus. Closely with *superabat.* "*From the side of* the foreign ships." We should rather say "*on* the ships." See on I. **4,** 1, *ex vinclis.* The meaning of the whole section is, "Even though the Romans erected turrets on board their ships, yet the enemy's ships were built so high in the stern that these turrets did not reach up to them."

5. **praeacutae.** "Sharpened at the end." So in II. **29,** 3. Cp. note on section 6.

insertae affixaeque—falcium. "Hooks firmly fixed in long poles, of a shape which did not differ from (that of) hooks used to tear down walls." See note on *Army,* § 9.

absimili forma [§ 115] **muralium falcium.** [N. S. IV. *E.* p. 136.]

non absimili. Cp. note on I. **42,** 6, *non irridicule.*

6. **antemnae.** "The sailyards." *Destinare antemnas ad malos,* "To fasten the sailyards to the masts." The original meaning of *destinare* (connected with *sto*) is "to make firm," "to bind."

funes praerumpebantur. "The ropes were broken off short." The preposition *prae* in composition is commonly used with the meaning "in front," or "at the end." Cp. section 5.

navigio incitato. [§ 125.]

9. **loca.** [§ 25 (6).]

despectus in mare. "A looking down on to," "view over the sea." Cp. II. **29,** 3.

15.

1. **singulas binae ac ternae.** The distributive numerals [N. E. IV. *A.* p. 128] imply that the actions described were happening in various places. "Whilst *each* ship was surrounded by two or three others."

cum—circumsteterant. The indicative, as here, is the usual mood used by Caesar with *cum,* meaning "whenever" (cp. Roby, §§ 1716, 1717), though he occasionally uses the subjunctive. See on I. **25,** 3.

transcendere in hostium naves. "To board the enemy's ships." The *trans* expresses the crossing over from one ship to the other.

2. **ei rei.** [§ 107.] *I.e.* the *expugnatio.* "When no help was discovered against this."

3. **malacia.** "Calm," "lull of the wind." A word borrowed from the Greek *μαλακία* (*μαλακός* = soft).

5. **noctis interventu.** [§ 120.] See note on I. 13, 2, *bello Cassiano.*

ab hora quarta. *I.e.* ten o'clock. The Romans counted the hours of the day from six o'clock a.m.; night began at six o'clock p.m. See note on *Army*, § 10.

16.

2. **cum (omnis juventus)—tum (navium).** = Both—and.

gravioris aetatis. [§ 128.] "Of advanced age;" those who carried a greater weight of years.

navium. [§ 130.] Dependent on *quod ubique fuerat.*

3. **reciperent.** [§ 149.]

4. **quo diligentius conservaretur.** [§ 150.]

jus legatorum. "The rights" or "sanctity of ambassadors."

senatus. See note on I. 31, 6.

sub corona vendidit. "Sold by auction." Captives in war according to Roman law became the absolute property of the captors, and might therefore be sold by auction. In olden times slaves exposed for sale wore chaplets on their heads, a symbol which expressed that the sellers in no way guaranteed them. Hence *sub corona vendere.*

We may notice here that Caesar thinks it desirable to justify his harsh treatment of the Veneti by alleging the necessity of maintaining the sanctity of ambassadors. Cp. for similar severe measures on Caesar's part, II. 33, 6.

17.

1. **Dum—geruntur.** [§ 153 (2).]

2. **summam imperii** [§ 130] **earum civitatum** [§ 132]. "The chief authority over these states."

3. **his paucis diebus.** [§ 120.] *I.e.* within the first few days after Sabinus' arrival.

quod nolebant. Sc. *senatores*, implied in *senatu suo* by synesis [§ 160].

4. **latro.** "Robber," "brigand." According to Festus this word is derived from Greek *λατρεία*, "service" (for hire),

and was first applied to mercenary troops. The word "brigand," borrowed from the Italian, originally meant a "foot soldier."

5. **idoneo omnibus rebus loco.** [N. S. V. *G.* 1, p. 137.] "In a position suitable in all respects."

castris. [§ 112.] See note on I. **40**, 8.

duum. =*Duorum.* This shorter form of the genitive plural is common in numerals, especially distributives (*binum, senum*).

duum milium. Sc. *passuum.*

spatio. Ablative of measure [§ 118]. See note on I. **22**, 5.

carperetur. "Was attacked."

6. **tantam opinionem timoris** [§ 132] **praebuit.** "Caused such a strong impression of his being afraid." Cp. *opinionem virtutis*, II. **8**, 1.

7. **eo absente, qui summam imperii teneret.** "In the absence of the commander-in-chief," *i.e.* Caesar. *Teneret*, subjunctive [§ 151], as expressing part of Sabinus' thought.

nisi aequo loco aut opportunitate aliqua data. "Except in a position of advantage" (opposite of *loco iniquo*), "or when any favourable condition offered itself."

legato. [§ 144 (*a*).]

18.

1. **callidus.** From *calleo.* Lit. "with hardened skin" (from labour); hence "laborious" or "crafty," as here.

2. **velit.** [§ 149.]

3. **pro perfuga.** "Passing for a deserter," "as if he were a deserter." Cp. I. **22**, 4, *pro viso.*

4. **neque longius abesse, quin proxima nocte—educat.** *Abesse*, infinitive of *abest*, used impersonally, and dependent on *docet.* Lit. "he tells them that it is not further off, but that on the next night;" *i.e.* "he tells them that no later than the next night," or "he tells them that on the very next night." [App. II., IV. (*C.*) V. 2, (1), p. 167.]

5. **ad castra ire.** [§ N. S. *E. b.* p. 144.]

6. **cunctatio—confirmatio, inopia—spes.** All these nominative cases, as well as the relatival clause *quod fere libenter homines id, quod volunt, credunt*, are in apposition to and explanatory of *multae res.* See note on **10**, 2.

cunctatio superiorum dierum [§ 128] **Sabini**

[§ 127]. "Sabinus' delay during the previous days." See note on II. 17, 2.

7. **priusquam ab his sit concessum.** [§ 152, III.]

8. **ut explorata victoria.** [§ 125.] "As though the victory had been secured." *Explorare,* "to ascertain thoroughly," "to be certain of."

sarmentis virgultisque. "Boughs and brushwood." *Sarmentum* from *sarpo,* "to prune," "to lop;" *virgultum,* "a collection of twigs," from *virgula,* with the collective termination *-etum.*

19.

1. **Locus erat castrorum, etc.** "The position of the camp was high, sloping gradually upwards from below for about a mile."

mille passus. [§ 102 (2).] In I. 25, 4, Caesar uses *mille passuum,* where see note. See note on I. 22, 5.

spatii. [§ 131.]

ad se colligendos. See note on 4, 4, *sui recipiendi.* Cp. note on *Se and Suus,* I. (*b*).

exanimati. "Exhausted," "out of breath." Derived from *ex anima.* Cp. II. 23, 1.

4. **integris viribus.** [§ 113.]

Quos impeditos—eorum. For this somewhat loose construction, for which we should more naturally have expected *quorum impeditorum,* cp. I. 12, 3, where see note.

equites. Nominative to *relinquunt, consectati* agreeing with it.

5. **Titurio.** *I.e.* Titurio Sabino.

6. **animus—mens.** *Animus* is "impulse," "impulsive courage," whilst *mens* is "resolution" or "reasoned determination."

resistens. The present participle here is used as an adjective. Cp. *dicto audientes,* I. 39, 7.

20.

1. **ut ante dictum est.** *I.e.* in the description of the geography of Gaul in I. 1.

ex tertia parte Galliae aestimanda est. "Is to be reckoned at a third part of Gaul." The preposition *ex* here expresses the starting-point or standard of calculation, as in

such expressions as *heres ex asse*, "an heir to the whole property." [N. E. IV. *B. c.* p. 130.]

paucis ante annis. [§ 120.] See note on I. 18, 6. During the war against Sertorius, who had placed himself at the head of Spanish insurgents (cp. 23, 5), L. Mallius, proconsul of Gallia Narbonensis, and L. Valerius Praeconinus were routed, and the latter slain by Hirtuleius, the quaestor of Sertorius, A.D. 78. See *Biographical Index.*

2. **re frumentaria provisa.** *Providere* is sometimes transitive governing accusative (cp. 9, 3), and sometimes intransitive used with a dative (cp. 18, 6).

auxiliis equitatuque comparato. The ablative *comparato* agrees in number and case with the last-mentioned noun only, though in sense it qualifies both. Cp. 5, 2, and note on *Army*, § 3.

Galliae provinciae. [§ 87.] Genitive dependent on *civitates.* For the apposition, see note on I. 19, 3.

his regionibus. [§ 106, (1).]

evocatis. See note on *Army*, § 4.

4. **convallis.** A valley shut in on all sides by high hills.

21.

1. **Pugnatum est.** [N. S. *E. b.* p. 144.]

victoriis. [§ 119, *a.* (2).]

sine reliquis legionibus. Crassus had only twelve cohorts with him. Cp. 11, 3.

adulescentulo duce. [§ 125, *a.*] The diminutive form from *adulescens* is used here as giving additional point to the remark. On the diminutive, see on I. 8, 2.

2. **vineas turresque egit.** See note on *Army*, § 9.

3. **alias—alias.** "At various *times*" (not places). See on II. 29, 5.

cuniculus. "A mine." Greek ὑπόνομος. The word *cuniculus*, originally a "rabbit," was applied to a mine from the resemblance to the rabbit's burrow.

multis locis. [N. S. V. *G.* 1, 137.]

aerariae structurae. "Mining works," *aerariae* being an adjective from *aes*, "copper." There is another reading, *aerariae structuraeque*, in which case *aerariae* is a substantive "copperworks," like *ferrariae*, ironworks.

faciunt. Sc. *jussa.* "They carry out their orders."

22.

1. **soldurios.** Derived from the root of the German word *sollen*, "to be obliged or bound" (English, *shall, should*), and so meaning the same as *obligati, devincti.* Their relation to their chief is in another place (*B. G.* VII. 40, 7) compared by Caesar to that of clients to their patron, for which see note on I. 4, 2.

2) **ut—fruantur.** This clause defines and explains the preceding words *haec est condicio.* See on I. 5, 1.

condicio. See note on 10, 3.

commodis. [§ 119, *a.*]

dediderint. [§ 151.]

sibi mortem consciscant. "Commit suicide."

3. **memoria.** See note on I. 12, 5.

quisquam. [N. S. IX. *A.* p. 141.]

neque repertus est quisquam, qui recusaret. [§ 150.] Here Caesar uses the historical sequence after *repertus est*, the perfect definite, which is not irregular, although the primary sequence is more usual. (But see Roby, § 1472, footnote.)

4. **cum his Adiatunnus.** After a long parenthesis, extending from section 1, at the words *quos illi soldurios appellant*, to section 3, at the words *mori recusaret*, Caesar resumes his unfinished sentence, repeating his nominative *Adiatunnus*, and summing up again with the words *cum his* what he had before expressed as *cum sexcentis devotis.* This resumption of an unfinished sentence is called *epanalepsis* (ἐπί, ἀνά, λῆψις, from λαμβάνω, "taking up again"). We often do the same in English with the addition of the words "I say." "With these men, I say, Adiatunnus." For other instances in Caesar, see I. 35, 4; II. 25, 1.

23.

2. **et natura** [§ 113] **et manu munitum.** "Strongly fortified both by natural position and by artificial means," "by nature and by art."

paucis diebus [§ 120], **quibus eo ventum erat.** [N. S. IX. *E. b.* p. 144.] "Within a few days, in the course of which the Romans had arrived at the place."

quoqueversum dimittere. "To despatch in all directions." *Versus* and *versum* are commonly used in compounds with adverbs of place as here. See note on II. 18, 2.

3. **quae sunt citerioris Hispaniae** [§ 127] **finitimae Aquitaniae** [§ 106, 1]. "These states, which form part of Hither Spain, and lie nearest to Aquitania." *Finitimae* is nominative plural.

4. **Quorum adventu.** See note on *bello Cassiano*, I. 13, 2.

magna cum auctoritate. "With the great influence which the aid from these states would give."

5. **omnes annos.** "All the years of Sertorius' warfare with Rome." See *Biographical Index*.

6. **consuetudine.** [§ 113.] See note on I. 7, 3, *ejus voluntate*.

7. **satis praesidii.** [§ 130.]

supportari. "Was being brought up to his aid." See note on I. 40, 11.

in dies. Though translated "daily," like *cotidie*, *in dies* differs from *cotidie* in that it implies always an increase or decrease each day.

non cunctandum, quin pugna decertaret. [App. II., IV. (*C*), V. 2, p. 167.] "That he must not delay to fight a decisive battle." See note on I. 44, 9. *Cunctandum* neuter because impersonal.

24.

1. **productis omnibus copiis duplici acie instituta.** For the double ablative absolute, see note on I. 24, 3; and see section 2. For *duplex acies* see note on *Army*, § 7.

consilii. [§ 130.]

2. **sine ullo vulnere.** "Without a blow," "without loss."

victoria. [§ 119, *a.*]

3. **impeditos in agmine et sub sarcinis.** "Hampered, as being in marching order and encumbered with baggage." For *impediti* see note on *Army*, § 2 (*d*).

4. **castris.** [§ 112.] See note on I. 40, 8.

5. **opinione timoris.** "The impression which they had caused of their being afraid." Cp. II. 8, 1.

exspectari quin ad castra iretur. Both verbs here are impersonal [N. S. IX. *E. b.* p 144], though in English we translate them by personal active verbs. "They ought not to wait longer before marching to the camp."

cohortatus suos omnibus cupientibus. See note on II. 22, 1, *diversis legionibus.*

25.

1. **vallo.** [§ 123.] See note on *Army*, § 10.

speciem atque opinionem pugnantium praeberent. "Conveyed the appearance and impression of men fighting." Cp. 24, 5.

constanter et non timide. "Obstinately and without show of fear."

ex loco superiore. "From a post of vantage." Cp. 4, 2.

2. **ab decumana porta.** See note on *Army*, § 10. For *ab* = on the side of, see note on I. 1, 4.

26.

ut—excitarent, quid fieri velit, [§ 149] **ostendit.** Notice here the change of sequence from historic *ostendit* and *excitarent* to primary *velit.* The change is probably due to a wish to make the narrative more vivid, in the same way as the historical present indicative is constantly used. "Showed them what his wishes are." See note on *Reported Speech*, III. *note* (4).

2. **praesidio castris relictae.** [§ 108.]

intritae ab labore. This is not an instance of the use of *ab* with the agent, for *intritus* is an adjective, not a participle; but as in the phrase *integrae ab labore*, etc., *ab* means "in consequence of." Cp. Roby, § 1810.

intritus. Here an adjective, derived from the negative particle *in* and *tero*, though in Cicero, and generally, it is the participle from *intero*, with the prepositional *in.*

3. **quam plane ab his videri.** The infinitive depends on *possent*, which must be supplied from the *posset* which follows.

posset. Subjunctive, because it expresses the purpose in their minds in marching so quickly. [§ 151.]

5. **intenderunt.** "Exerted themselves."

6. **apertissimis campis.** [§ 121.]

quae—convenisse constabat. *Quae*, neuter plural, agreeing with *milia;* accusative before infinitive *convenisse*, dependent on *constabat.*

quarta parte. "A fourth part." See note on I. 12, 2.

multa nocte. "In the dead of night." Cp. *multo die*, I. 22, 4.

27.

1. **ultro.** "Of their own accord," "unasked." See note on I. 42, 2.

2. **paucae ultimae nationes.** Notice here the use of two adjectives with one substantive, which is rare in Latin. "A few of the most distant nations." See note on I. 18, 6.

28.

1. **in armis essent.** [§ 150.]

alia ratione ac reliqui. "In a very different way from the rest." See note on II. 19, 2.

2. **contendissent.** [§ 151.]

continentes silvas. "A continuous or uninterrupted line of wood." *Contineo* as a neuter verb, "to hold together,' "to be continuous," is very rare, except in the present participle. From this meaning come its derivatives, *continuus* (see I. 48, 3), *continuatio* (29, 2), *continens*, "a continent," *i.e.* an uninterrupted space of land, *continenter* (of time), "constantly" (I. 1, 3), *continuo*, "straightway."

3. **silvarum—partibus silvae.** For the change from plural to singular, and the change of meaning conveyed, see note on II. 19, 5.

in opere. "In making and fortifying their camp." Cp. II. 20, 1; 3, 1.

evolaverunt. Of men "flying." So *provolaverunt*, II. 19, 6.

4. **impeditioribus locis.** [N. S. V. *G.* 1, p. 137.]

29.

1. **Reliquis deinceps diebus.** The position of these words shows that *deinceps* qualifies *reliquis diebus.* "In the remaining days that followed."

inermibus. (*In-arma.*) "Unarmed."

imprudentibus. (*In-pro-videntibus;* cp. *nuper* = *noviper.*) "Off their guard."

materiam. Here, as very often = "timber." From meaning generally "material," it came to be restricted to the special material, timber.

pro vallo. "In place of," "to serve as a rampart," not "in front of," for there was no regular *vallum* there. Cp. I. **26**, 3.

2. **celeritate** [§ 115] **magno spatio** [§ 125] **paucis diebus** [§ 120].

pecus atque extrema impedimenta. "The cattle of the Morini, and the rear of the baggage."

continuatione imbrium. [§ 111.] "By an uninterrupted rainfall." See note on **28**, 2.

sub pellibus. "Under hides," *i.e.* in their tents (*tentoria*); in modern English idiom "under canvas." The winter huts were called *casae stramenticiae*, because they were covered with *stramentum*, "straw." See note on *Army*, § 10.

APPENDICES.

RULES OF REPORTED SPEECH

(*Oratio Obliqua*).

I. "When a statement, question, or supposition is reported in a manner which makes it dependent in construction on some such word as 'said,' the language is said to be *oblique* or indirect (*oratio obliqua*)."—Roby, § 1780.

Note.—The constructions of *oratio obliqua* are also used when not an actual statement, but an unexpressed thought, reason, or purpose is reported. See I. 6, 2.

II. Use of Moods.

(*a*) All verbs of principal sentences, which in direct speech (*oratio recta*) make a statement in the indicative mood, are in reported speech put in the infinitive, and their subjects in the accusative case. See I. 14, 1.

(*b*) Verbs which question in the indicative mood in direct speech are, if of the *first* or *third* person, put in the *infinitive* in reported speech; if of the *second* person, in the subjunctive. See I. 14, 2; I. 40, 4; I. 44, 15.

Note.—(1) Verbs which question in the *subjunctive* mood in direct speech retain that mood in reported speech. See I. 40, 3.

(2) Verbs which question in the indicative in direct speech are put in the subjunctive in reported speech, if closely dependent on a verb of asking. See I. 32, 2.

(*c*) Verbs which command in direct speech are in reported speech put in the subjunctive. See I. 35, 3.

(*d*) Verbs of subordinate sentences in direct speech are put in the subjunctive in reported speech. See I. 14, 1.

Note.—(1) Some apparently subordinate sentences in reported speech, introduced by *qui* or *cum*, have their verb in the infinitive. This only occurs when the relatives *qui*, *cum*, etc. are used as exactly equivalent to *et is*, *is enim*, *et tum*, etc. See I. **40**, 6.

(2) *Dum* (whilst) is sometimes followed by the present indicative even in reported speech. (Roby, § 1784 (*c*)).

(3) The verb of the apodosis of a conditional sentence in the subjunctive in direct speech is put in the infinitive in reported speech, the present and perfect subjunctive being generally replaced by the participle in *-rus* with *esse*, or, especially in the passive, by *fore* or *futurum esse ut* with the subjunctive; the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive by the participle in *-rus* with *fuisse*, or, especially in the passive, by *futurum fuisse ut* with the subjunctive. See I. **10**, 2; I. **34**, 2.

III. Use of Tenses.

(*a*) *Of the infinitive.*

The present, perfect, or future infinitive are used according as the time is present, past, or future to the main verb on which the reported speech depends.

(*b*) *Of the subjunctive.*

If the main verb on which the reported speech depends is in a primary tense (present, perfect with *have*, or future), the dependent subjunctives are also in the primary tenses, viz. *present*, *perfect*, or *future* (participle in *-rus* with *sim* or *fuerim*), according as the time is the same as, before, or after that of the main verb.

If the main verb is in a historic tense (imperfect, aorist perfect, or pluperfect), the dependent subjunctives are also in the historic tenses, viz. imperfect, pluperfect, or future (participle in *-rus* with *essem* or *fuissem*), according as the time is the same as, before, or after that of the main verb.

Note.—(1) For the future infinitive active and passive (especially in the case of verbs which have no supines) is often used a periphrasis, *fore* or *futurum esse ut* with the subjunctive, primary or historic, according to the tense of the main verb. See I. **20**, 4.

(2) Where no ambiguity in sense would arise, the present subjunctive after primary, and imperfect after historic, tenses are often used for the future subjunctive. So too the perfect and pluperfect for the future perfect. See I. **8**, 2; I. **31**, 2.

(3) The historic present is often used in narration instead of the past to give greater liveliness to the story. It is followed by either primary or historic dependent tenses. See I. **11**, 2; III. **5**, 2.

(4) On much the same principle the strict rule of sequence of tenses is often broken, especially in long passages of reported speech, by the intermixture of primary with historic tenses in the dependent verbs. The purpose is generally either to give greater life to the narrative, or to obtain greater accuracy of expression by using the original tenses of the speaker. See I. **14**, 4; I. **40**, 15.

IV. Use of Persons.

As in the ordinary language of historical narration the historian and his readers are regarded as standing apart from the events related, the third person alone can be used in reported speech. This rule holds good in Caesar's history, since he always, in speaking of himself, uses the third person. Thus—

ego, meus, of direct speech become *se, suus*, in reported speech.

tu, tuus / *iste, is, ille* } of direct speech become *is, ejus, ille*, etc., in reported speech.

Note.—Caesar frequently uses *nos, noster*, both in direct and reported speech, of the Roman people, army, etc., *i.e.* as exact equivalents to *Romani* or *Romanus* (adjective). See I. **1**, 1; I. **11**, 3.

SE AND SUUS.

I. *Se* and *suus* are used in reference to the subject of their own *verb*, whether that verb be

(*a*) Finite, *i.e.* indicative, subjunctive, or imperative.

(*b*) Infinite, *i.e.* infinitive, participle, gerund, gerundive, or supine.

E.g. (*a*) *Caesar* suos *a proelio continebat*, I. 15, 4; (*rogavit*) *quid* sibi *vellet?* I. 44, 15.

(*b*) *Helvetios—in fines* suos *reverti jussit*, I. 28, 3; sui *colligendi hostibus facultatem relinquunt*, III. 6, 1. Cp. III. 4, 4; 19, 1.

II. *Se* and *suus* are used in reference to the subject of the verb of the clause on which their own verb depends, if their own verb be

(*a*) Subjunctive in final clause.

(*b*) Subjunctive in reported speech.

(*c*) Subjunctive, because dependent on another subjunctive or infinitive. See Roby, § 1772.

(*d*) Infinite (as above in (*b*)).

E.g. (*a*) *Dat negotium Senonibus, uti*—se *certiorem faciant*, II. 2, 3.

(*b*) *His Caesar ita respondit—si obsides ab iis* sibi *dentur*, I. 14, 5.

(*d*) *Demonstrant* sibi *praeter agri solum nihil esse reliqui*, I. 11, 5; *Veneti omni ora maritima celeriter ad* suam *sententiam perducta, legationem mittunt*, III. 8, 5; *partiendum* sibi *exercitum putavit*, III. 10, 3.

Note.—In consecutive sentences the pronoun *is* is regularly used referring to the subject of a main verb. See I. 11, 3.

III. *Se* and *suus* are used occasionally of the logical, not grammatical, subject of their sentence.

E.g. Nam plerumque hominibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum suorum *brevitas nostra contemptui est*, II. 30, 3. (Here *hominibus Gallis brevitas contemptui est* = *homines Galli brevitatem contemnunt.*) Cp. I. 34, 1; II. 35, 1.

IV. But instances are found of *is*, *eum*, etc., for *se*, where the ordinary rules would require *se* or *suus*. Such are I. 6, 2; 14, 2; 37, 2; 47, 1; II. 1, 2; III. 1, 4.

CAESAR'S ARMY.

§ 1. Legionary Force.

When Caesar entered Gaul, in B.C. 58, there was only one legion (probably the tenth) in the Province. The threatened inroad of the Helvetii caused him to call up three legions which were in winter-quarters at Aquileia in Cisalpine Gaul, and to raise two more in the same district. To these six legions two others were added the next year. They are distinguished in the history by their number, from *tenth* to *fourteenth*, corresponding to the order of their seniority in service, according to the Roman custom at this period.

Auxiliary Force.

Besides his legionary troops Caesar had under his command a force of auxiliaries (*auxilia*), which was almost entirely composed of his light-armed skirmishers (*levis armatura*, II. **10**, 1; II. **24**, 1) and his cavalry.

§ 2. The Legion.

(*a*) *Its constitution.* Till the close of the social war (B.C. 87) the soldiers of the Roman legion were always citizens of Rome, the Italian allies (*socii*) serving as a distinct force under the name of *alarii*, being so called from their position in the battle array on the wings (*alae*) of the legions. After that date, with the extension of Roman citizenship to the Italians, the distinction of *legionarii* and *alarii* ceased. Moreover, till the first consulship of Marius (B.C. 107), the lowest class of citizens served in the legion as light-armed troops (*velites*). Marius abolished this practice, and from his time the term *miles legionarius*, like the Greek ὁπλίτης, meant a heavy-armed foot soldier.

Note.—*Alarii* is used I. **51**, 1, as an equivalent to *auxiliares*.

(*b*) *Its strength.* The strength of the Roman legion varied at

different periods, and in each period according to circumstances (cp. the phrase *legio plenissima*, III. 2, 3). Caesar gives no details of the strength of his legions in Gaul: but in V. 49, he says of two of his legions that they numbered then less than seven thousand men together; but they were probably below their full strength after a year's service in Gaul and Britain. Kraner puts the average strength of the legion at this period at from three thousand to three thousand six hundred: the article on *Exercitus* in Smith's *Dict. Antiqq.* at about five thousand.

(*c*) *Its divisions.* Each of Caesar's legions was divided, according to the system introduced by Marius, into ten *cohortes*, thirty *manipuli*, and sixty *centuriae*.

Note.—Caesar, in the *de Bello Gallico*, regularly uses the term *ordo* instead of *centuria*; *e.g.* I. 41, 3.

(*d*) *Arms and equipment of the legionaries.* The weapons carried by a legionary soldier were (1) the *pilum*, a spear used both for throwing and thrusting, about six feet and three quarters in length altogether, the shaft being about four feet and a half; and (2) the *gladius Hispanus*, a short thrusting sword about two feet long. His defensive armour consisted of a shield (*scutum*) four feet or more in height, a helmet of iron (*cassis*) or of leather (*galea*), adorned with a crest or plume, a cuirass (*lorica*), and a greave (*ocrea*) on the right leg, which was unprotected by the shield. On a march the shield was carried in a leathern cover, and the helmet hanging by a strap from the neck (II. 21, 4). The soldier's pack (*sarcina*) consisted of a bag of corn sufficient for a fortnight's consumption, several stakes (*valli*) and tools for camp fortification, cooking utensils, etc. The weight thus carried was very great, probably reaching forty-five pounds. Before an engagement the *sarcina* was laid aside (*conferre sarcinas*, I. 24, 2); and thus the frequent phrase *miles expeditus* means a soldier relieved of his pack, and so ready for fighting. (Cp. *legiones expeditae*, II. 19, 3.)

§ 3. The Auxiliaries.

The auxiliary forces (*auxilia*, I. 24, 2; III. 20, 2) in a Roman army consisted wholly of foreign mercenaries, contingents from allied states, or troops raised in Roman provinces. The two former generally retained their native arms and mode of fighting; the provincials approached more nearly to the

Roman discipline. In Caesar's army in Gaul the cavalry was almost entirely composed of Gauls (I. 15, 1; I. 42, 5). There were also archers from Numidia and Crete, and slingers from the Balearic Islands (II. 7, 1). Of the strength of this auxiliary force there are no details. The provincial infantry was divided into cohorts: the cavalry into *alae*, *turmae*, and *decuriae*.

§ 4.

Fabri. The army was accompanied by a corps of engineers and pioneers (*fabri*).

Evocati. Veteran soldiers, who had earned exemption from compulsory service, were often induced to join again by higher pay than the ordinary soldier received, and immunity from all military duties except fighting. As serving at the special request of the general (*nominatim evocati*, III. 20, 2), they received the name *evocati*.

The *Cohors praetoria* was composed of troops which served as a bodyguard to the general-in-chief. They were picked legionaries or *evocati;* and to this corps was generally attached a number of young men of family and wealth, who thus served their first campaigns under the eye of the general. The *praetoriani* enjoyed certain privileges and exemptions from the rougher parts of the ordinary soldier's service. (I. 40, 15.)

Exploratores were detachments sent out to reconnoitre, and were usually composed of cavalry. (II. 11, 3.)

Speculatores were men employed singly as spies or scouts. (II. 11, 2.)

Calones. The men who had charge on the march of the baggage-train, as waggon-drivers, etc., were named *calones*. (II. 24, 2.)

Lixae were the sutlers, who followed the army for the sake of trading with the soldiers in food, etc.

§ 5. The Officers.

(*a*) *The Imperator.* The general-in-chief was named *imperator* because to him was delegated by the Roman commonwealth the supreme control over its army (*imperium militare*). He was absolute in the conduct of the war; but the declaration of war or conclusion of peace belonged to the senate and

§ 8. The Battle.

In II. 20 a vivid description is given of the preliminaries to a battle. A red standard displayed on the general's tent (*vexillum proponere*) called up the men, the sound of the trumpet was the signal for falling into the ranks (*signum tuba dare*); the *acies* being formed, the general made a short speech of encouragement to his men (*milites cohortari*), and then the trumpet sounded the attack. Each maniple had its flag (*signum*), round which the soldiers could rally in the confusion of the fight: hence phrases like *signa inferre*, "to charge" (II. 25, 1), *signa conferre*, "to take close order," *signa convertere* (II. 26, 1) "to wheel"; for the men followed the motions of their *signifer*: and so *signa* itself is used as equivalent to *manipuli*. The standard of the legion was called *aquila*, as having the device of an eagle on the top of the flagstaff; and its bearer was styled the *aquilifer*. In II. 25, 1, a *signifer* belonging to a cohort, not to a maniple, is mentioned.

§ 9. The Siege and Siege-Engines.

Where a town could not be taken at the first assault (*ex itinere expugnare*, II. 12, 2) it was reduced either by blockade (*obsidio*) or by siege with regular works and approaches. An earthwork (*agger*) was thrown up at first at some distance from the town wall, but gradually brought nearer and raised to a level with the battlements. On or near the *agger* wooden towers of several storeys were built, and moved up by rollers. From the upper storeys of these missiles could be thrown into the town; in the lowest storey was the battering-ram (*aries*). For the protection of the soldiers whilst building the *agger* or undermining the wall of the besieged place *vineae* were used, which were sheds on wheels, and roofed with planks or wattles, under which shelter the men worked (*vineas agere* = to bring up the *vineae* to the wall; II. 12, 3; II. 30, 3; III. 21, 2).

The testudo. (II. 6, 2.) In the assault the *testudo* formation was often used by the attacking party, who advanced to the wall in close order, the front rank with their shields before them, the rest holding them above their heads, so that the edges of the shields overlapped each other, and formed a defence against the stones, beams, etc., hurled down by the defenders.

Tormenta. The *tormenta* were engines for throwing missiles of great size. The chief of them were *catapultae* (καταπέλται), which shot arrows, and *ballistae*, which shot stones. They are mentioned in II. 8, 4 as being used in defence of a fortified place.

Falces murales. The *falces murales* in III. 14, 5, were sickle-shaped hooks fixed at the end of poles, and used in tearing down the battlements of a wall.

§ 10. The Camp.

A Roman army never encamped even for a single night without fortifying its position. Towards the close of the day's march a detachment was sent forward, under a tribune and centurions (II. 17, 1), to choose the site of the camp, and measure out the ground plan, which seldom varied except in dimensions, according to the numbers of the army for which the camp was designed (II. 19, 5). On the arrival of the army at the place the men immediately threw up an earthen rampart (*agger*), with a breastwork (*vallum*) of palisades. The earth of the *agger* came chiefly from the fosse (*fossa*) which was dug outside it; and the *agger* and *fossa* together were led round the four sides of the camp. Within this defence the tents (*tentoria, tabernacula*) were next pitched; they were made of skins (*sub pellibus esse*, III. 29, 2); though in a permanent camp (*castra stativa*), especially in winter-quarters (*hiberna*), more comfortable thatched huts were built.

The details of the arrangement of the camp in Caesar's time are not very certainly known; for we have no express description of a Roman camp between the Punic wars and the reign of Trajan. The principal features common to the two descriptions left to us are—

(1) The *via praetoria*, bisecting the square space of the camp from back to front, and ending in the *porta praetoria* on the side facing the enemy, and the *porta decumana* on the other side (II. 24, 2; III. 25, 2).

(2) The two cross streets trisecting the side of the camp, viz.:—

(*a*) The *via principalis*, nearer the *porta praetoria*, and ending in the gates *porta principalis, dextra* and *sinistra*.

(*b*) The *via quintana*, nearer the *porta decumana*, which had no gates.

(3) The *praetorium*, or general's quarters, originally between the *via principalis* and the *porta praetoria*, but later occupying part of the space between the *via principalis* and *via quintana*.

(4) In front of the *praetorium* was an open space called the *principia*, in which were the *tribunal*, a raised seat from which the general addressed the soldiers and administered justice, and the altar (*ara*).

The guard of the camp was intrusted to outposts of one or two cohorts and a *turma* of cavalry in front of the gates (*in statione esse pro portis*): sentries at the gates (*custodiae*): sentinels on the ramparts (*praesidia*): night-sentinels (*vigiliae*). The night-watches lasted from six in the evening till six in the morning, and the posts were relieved every three hours; hence the word *vigilia* is used commonly to mark time during the night, the *prima vigilia* lasting from six o'clock till nine, and so on. (I. 12, 2; 40, 14; II. 11, 1; 33, 2.)

Note.—*Stationes* is used in II. 18, 3, of the outposts of an army.

INDICES.

GEOGRAPHICAL.

Admagetobriga (i. 31, 12). A town whose site is unknown, where Ariovistus with his German army conquered the Gauls.

Aduatŭci (ii. 4, 9 ; 16, 4 ; 29, 1 ; 31, 4). A tribe of Belgic Gaul, descendants of the Cimbri and the Teutones, who, when they marched southwards towards Italy, left six thousand men behind to guard the baggage. After the defeat of the Teutones and Cimbri by C. Marius at Aquae Sextiae (B.C. 102) and Campi Raudii near Vercellae (B.C. 101), these six thousand established themselves among the Belgae. They joined the general league of the Belgae against Caesar, who besieged them in a strongly fortified town and captured it. The name of the town is not given in Caesar, and its exact site is unknown.

Aedui (i. *passim*, ii. 5, 2, 3 ; 10, 5 ; 14, 1-3, 5, 6 ; 15, 1). A very important people of Celtic Gaul, who had long been the bitter rivals of their neighbours the Sequani. They sought and obtained the alliance of Rome, and received from the senate the honourable title of Brothers of the Roman people. In 71 B.C. the Sequani, with the help of the Germans and king Ariovistus, defeated the Aedui and made them tributary, but found themselves soon oppressed by Ariovistus. The Aedui and Sequani together intreated Caesar's help against Ariovistus in 58 B.C. In 52 B.C. the Aedui joined in a great rebellion against Caesar, and were defeated. Their chief town was Bibracte.

Allobrŏges (i. 6, 1, 2 ; 10, 5 ; 11, 5 ; 14, 2, 5 ; 28, 3, 4 ; 44, 17 ; iii. 1, 1 ; 6, 4). An important Gallic tribe, situated in the northernmost corner of the Provincia. They extended northwards to Genava on the Lacus Lemannus, where their territory joined that of the Helvetii. They had been attacked by the Romans, in reply to the appeal of the Aedui, in 121 B.C. near

the junction of the Rhodanus and the Arar. The Roman general Q. Fabius Maximus defeated them, and took in consequence the cognomen of Allobrogicus.

Ambarri (i. 14, 2; *Aedui Ambarri*, i. 11, 4). A tribe of Celtic Gaul whom Caesar calls friends and kinsmen of the Aedui. If the reading in i. 11, 4 is correct (see note there), they must have been called by the double name in order to show their close connection with the Aedui; but there seems to be no other example of the kind. They were situated in the valley of the Rhodanus, between that river and the Arar.

Ambiani (ii. 4, 9; 15, 2). A tribe of Belgae who joined in the confederacy against Caesar in 57 B.C. Their chief town was Samarobriva, afterwards called Ambiani (probably Amiens).

Ambiliati (iii. 9, 10). A tribe, otherwise unknown, mentioned by Caesar as allies of the Veneti.

Andes (ii. 35, 3; iii. 7, 2). A tribe of Celtic Gaul situated north of the Liger.

Aquileia (i. 10, 3). An important city in Cisalpine Gaul, situated at the head of the Adriatic. Caesar made it the headquarters of his army in Cisalpine Gaul. It is still called Aquileia.

Aquitania (i. 1, 6; iii. 11, 3; 20, 1; 21, 1; 23, 3; 26, 6; 27, 1); *Aquitani* (i. 1, 1, 2; iii. 21, 3). Aquitania was the south-western division of Gallia Transalpina, bounded by the Ocean, the Pyrenees, the Province, and by the Garumna in some parts of its course. In B.C. 56 the Aquitani were attacked by P. Crassus in order to prevent their sending reinforcements to the Veneti: after much fighting Crassus won a decisive victory, and the greater part of Aquitania surrendered to him.

Arar (i. 12, 1, 2; 13, 1; 16, 2). A river which rises in Mons Vosegus (Vosges), and flows southwards until it joins the Rhodanus at Lugdunum (Lyons). In later times it was called Sacona (hence its modern name Saône).

Arverni (i. 31, 3, 4; 45, 2). A Celtic tribe living in the highlands north of Mons Cevenna (Cevennes), where their name survives in the modern Auvergne. For some time rivals of the Aedui, they had been defeated by them. In 121 B.C. they allied with the Allobroges, and were defeated by

Q. Fabius Maximus, though their land was not included in the Provincia. Allied with the Sequani, they had invited Ariovistus to cross the Rhine with his German troops. Their chief town was Gergovia.

Atrebătes (ii. 4, 9; 23, 1; *Atrebati*, ii. 16, 2). (Cp. *Santones*, *Santoni.*) A tribe of Belgae who joined in the confederacy against Caesar in 57 B.C. They were defeated with the Nervii. The province of Artois and the town of Arras (Fr.), or Atrecht (Ger.), still retain their name.

Aulerci (ii. 34, 1; iii. 17, 3; 29, 3). An important people among the maritime states of Gaul who joined the Veneti in their opposition to Caesar, and were subdued with them. They included among other tribes the Eburovīces and the Diablintes.

Ausci (iii. 27, 1). A tribe of eastern Aquitania who surrendered to P. Crassus. The name of their chief town, Augusta Auscorum, survives as Auch.

Axona (ii. 5, 4; 9, 3). The river Aisne, a tributary of the Oise, which runs into the Seine. A battle between Caesar and the Belgic confederacy was fought in its immediate neighbourhood in B.C. 57.

Baleāres (ii. 7, 1). The inhabitants of the Balearic Islands, between Spain and Sardinia, the group containing Majorca, Minorca, and Iviça. They were celebrated for their skill as slingers, and acted as mercenaries under Caesar.

Belgae (i. 1, 1-5; ii. 1-6, 14, 15, 17, 19; iii. 7, 1; 11, 2). The generic name for the various tribes inhabiting the northern part of Gaul. In B.C. 57 Caesar undertook a war against the confederacy of Belgic tribes, in which all joined except the Remi. After a crushing defeat of the Nervii the rest of the Belgae surrendered. They were closely connected with the south-east of Britain, where we also find their name.

Bellovăci (ii. 4, 5; 5, 3; 10, 5; 13, 1; 14, 2, 5). A powerful tribe in the south-west of Belgic Gaul. They surrendered to Caesar soon after the submission of the Suessiones. Caesar mentions their town, Bratuspantium. Their name survives in Beauvais.

Bibracte (i. 23, 1). The chief town of the Aedui, of great strength and importance. In 58 B.C. Caesar marched towards

the town to secure supplies, when the Helvetii attacked him, and a battle ensued. They were completely defeated, and soon after surrendered. It was afterwards called Augustodunum, a name which survives in *Autun*.

Bibrax (ii. 6, 1). An important town of the Remi, near which Caesar's camp on the Axona was situated. It was attacked by the Belgic confederacy. Its exact position is uncertain.

Bigerriones (iii. 27, 1). A tribe of Aquitani, near the Pyrenees, who surrendered to P. Crassus. A part of their country is still called Bigorre.

Biturĭges (i. 18, 3). A tribe in the centre of Celtic Gaul, mentioned by Livy (v. 34) as the chief people of Celtic Gaul in the time of Tarquinius Priscus. In Caesar's time they were under the supremacy of the Aedui. Their name survives in the modern town of Bourges (anciently Avaricum).

Boii (i. 5, 3; 25, 5; 28, 5; 29, 2). A tribe of Celtic Gaul. In Caesar's time part of them had crossed the Rhine into Germany and attacked Noricum. They allied with the Helvetii when these began their migration westward, and were defeated with them. At the request of the Aedui, Caesar allowed them to settle in Aeduan territory, probably between the Liger (Loire) and the Elaver (Allier).

Bratuspantium (ii. 13, 2). A town of the Bellovaci, to which they retreated before their surrender to Caesar. Its exact position is uncertain (probably either Beauvais or Breteuil).

Britannia (ii. 4, 7; 14, 4; iii. 9, 10). The Roman name of Britain. In Caesar's time close relations seem to have been maintained by Britain with the Belgae on the opposite coast, and with the Veneti.

Caeroesi (ii. 4, 10). A tribe of Germans situated among the Belgae, whose confederacy they joined. Their exact position is unknown. There is a river Chiers, a tributary of the Meuse.

Caleti (ii. 4, 9; elsewhere *Caletes*). (Cp. *Santoni*, *Santones*.) A tribe of Belgic Gaul who joined the confederacy against Caesar in 57 B.C. They were situated near the mouth of the Sequana (Seine), in the district called Pays de Caux, a corruption of their name.

Cantabri (iii. 26, 6). A wild people in the mountainous district on the north coast of Spain who joined the Aquitani against P. Crassus. They were afterwards defeated by Augustus Caesar.

Carnūtes (ii. 35, 3). A Celtic tribe situated between the Sequana (Seine) and the Liger (Loire). Their chief towns were Cenabum (now Orleans) and Autricum (called later Carnutes, and now from that Chartres).

Caturiges (i. 10, 4). An Alpine tribe, east of the Provincia, who tried unsuccessfully to oppose Caesar's march across the Alps. Their name survives in the modern Chorges.

Celtae (i. 1, 1). See *Introduction.*

Ceutrōnes (i. 10, 4). An Alpine tribe who, with the Caturiges, tried to oppose Caesar's march. Their name survives in the modern Centron.

Cimbri (i. 33, 4; 40, 5; ii. 4, 2; 29, 4). A powerful people, apparently coming from the Cimbric Chersonese (Jutland), who, together with the Teutones, overran Gaul, and defeated several Roman armies, between 113 and 101 B.C. The Cimbri were finally attacked by C. Marius on the Campi Raudii near Vercellae in 101, the Teutones their allies having been cut to pieces by the same general at Aquae Sextiae (Aix) in 102.

Cocosates (iii. 27, 1). A tribe of Aquitani who surrendered to P. Crassus. Their town was Cocosa, probably the modern Caussèque.

Condrusi (ii. 4, 10). A tribe of Germans situated among the Belgae, whose confederacy they joined. They lived in the neighbourhood of the Mosa (Meuse), in the district still called Condroz, in modern Belgium.

Cretae (ii. 7, 1). The inhabitants of Creta (Crete) in the Mediterranean. Some of these served as bowmen in Caesar's army.

Curiosolites (ii. 34, 1; iii. 7, 4; 11, 4). A Celtic tribe bordering on the sea. Their name still survives in Corseult, a village near Dinan.

Diablintes (iii. 9, 10; *al. Diablintres*). A tribe of Gauls allied with the Veneti against Caesar. They are included by Ptolemy under the generic name of Aulerci, and seem to have been situated north of the Liger (Loire), near the modern town of Le Mans.

Dubis (i. 38, 4; *al. Alduasdubis*). A river rising in Mount Jura, flowing past Vesontio (Besançon) into the Arar (Saône). It is still called Doubs.

Eburones (ii. 4, 10). A tribe of Germans situated among the Belgae, whose confederacy against Caesar they joined. They occupied land between the Rhenus (Rhine) and Mosa (Meuse). In 53 B.C. the Eburones were conquered by Caesar, and treated with such severity that they disappear entirely from history.

Eburovīces (iii. 17, 3). A Gallic tribe who were a branch of the Aulerci, and who joined the Venelli under Viridovix against Caesar. Situated south of the Sequana (Seine), their name survives in the modern town of Evreux (anciently Mediolanum).

Elusates (iii. 27, 1). A people of Aquitania who surrendered to P. Crassus. Situated south of the Garumna (Garonne), their name survives in the modern Eauze.

Esubii (ii. 34, 1; iii. 7, 3). A tribe of Celtic Gaul situated near the Veneti. Their exact position is unknown.

Gallia, Galli. See *Introduction.*

Garumna (i. 1, 2, 4, 6). The river Garonne, which rises in the Montes Pyrenaei, and flowing through Tolosa (Toulouse), empties itself into the ocean near Burdigala (Bordeaux). For a large part of its course it formed the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul.

Garumni (iii. 27, 1). A tribe of Aquitania who surrendered to P. Crassus. Their exact position is unknown: probably they lived near the source of the Garumna.

Gates (iii. 27, 1). A tribe of Aquitani who surrendered to P. Crassus. Their exact position is unknown.

Genava (i. 6, 2; 7, 1, 2). The most eastern town of the Allobroges, near the borders of the Helvetii, situated on the western extremity of the Lacus Lemannus (Lake of Geneva). It is still called Genève (Fr.), Geneva (Eng.), or Genf (Germ.).

Germani. See *Introduction.*

Graiocĕli (i. 10, 4). An Alpine tribe in the neighbourhood of the Alpes Graiae (Mont Cenis). Their exact position is unknown, nor is it certain whether the town Ocelum belonged to them or not. From the similarity of name it has generally been concluded that it did, in which case the first

part of the tribal name would be the same word as the (Alpes) Graiae : but all this is conjecture.

Harūdes (i. 31, 10; 37, 2; 51, 2). A tribe of Germani who formed part of Ariovistus' army. Twenty-four thousand of them crossed the Rhine into the territory of the Sequani. Charudes are mentioned by Ptolemy as inhabitants of the Cimbric Chersonese (Jutland), with whom these may have been identical.

Helvetii (i. 1-40). A Celtic people who in Caesar's time were settled in the strip of country bounded by the Rhine, the Alps, the Lacus Lemannus (Lake of Geneva), and Mount Jura. They were divided into four *pagi* or districts, two of which are mentioned by Caesar, the *pagus Tigurinus* (i. 12, 4, 7) and the *pagus Verbigĕnus* (i. 27, 4), the names of the other two not being known. Caesar tells us that they had twelve towns, but he does not give their names. The attempted migration of the Helvetii in B.C. 58, and the consequent fighting and victory of the Romans, are described in i. 2-29.

Hispania (i. 1, 6; iii. 23, 3). The peninsula which includes the modern kingdoms of Spain and Portugal. It had been conquered by the Romans in B.C. 205, and was formed into the two provinces of Hispania Citerior and Hispania Ulterior.

Illyricum (ii. 35, 2; iii. 7, 1). A Roman province formed in B.C. 168 of the country on the east coast of the Adriatic.

Jura (i. 2, 2; 6, 1; 8, 1). A range of hills which stretches in a north-easterly direction from the Rhone almost to the Rhine, and formed the boundary between the Helvetii and the Sequani.

Lacus Lemannus (i. 2, 2; i. 8, 1). The Lake of Geneva, still called Lac Leman.

Latovici (i. 5, 3; 28, 3; 29, 2). Friends and allies of the Helvetii, who joined them in their attempted migration. They seem to have been Germans who lived to the east of the Rhine, but their exact position is unknown.

Leuci (i. 40, 11). A tribe of Celtic Gaul from whom Caesar derived supplies. Their chief town, Tullum, now Toul, is on the Moselle.

Lexovii (iii. 9, 10; 11, 4; 17, 3; 29, 3). A tribe of Celtic Gaul on the west coast, south of the Sequana (Seine). They

joined the Venelli and Veneti against Caesar, and were defeated by Sabinus. Their name survives in the modern town Lisieux (anciently Noviomagus).

Liger (iii. 9, 1). The river Loire, which rises in Mons Cevenna (Cevennes) and flows into the Atlantic.

Lingŏnes (i. 26, 5; 40, 11). A tribe of Celtic Gaul from whom Caesar derived supplies. Their name survives in the modern town Langres, near the source of the Marne.

Marcomani (i. 51, 2). The "marchmen" or "bordermen." A tribe of Germans who fought under Ariovistus. They were probably situated on the frontier of Germany, just east of the Rhine.

Matrŏna (i. 1, 2). The river Marne, a tributary of the Sequana (Seine). It formed the boundary for part of its course between the Celtic Gauls and the Belgae.

Menapii (ii. 4, 9; iii. 9, 10; 28, 1). A tribe of Belgic Gaul near the mouths of the Rhine, whose country was protected by swamps and forests. They allied with the Belgae, and again with the Veneti, but at the end of the campaign of B.C. 56 still remained unconquered. In B.C. 53, however, they were attacked by Caesar, who compelled them to sue for peace and give hostages.

Morĭni (ii. 4, 9; iii. 9, 10; 28, 1). A tribe of Belgic Gaul south-west of the Menapii, in the neighbourhood of the modern Calais. They allied with the Belgae and the Veneti against Caesar, and, like the Menapii, remained unconquered in B.C. 56. They were soon after reduced to submission.

Namnētes (iii. 9, 10). A tribe of Celtic Gaul north of the Liger (Loire), who were allied with the Veneti against Caesar. Their name survives in Nantes (anciently Condivincum).

Nantuātes (iii. 1, 1, 4; 6, 4). A tribe of Celtic Gaul bordering the Provincia on the north-east.

Narbo (iii. 20, 2). A Roman colony founded B.C. 118 in the Provincia (which was called from it Gallia Narbonensis), situated on the Atax (Aude). It is still called Narbonne.

Nemĕtes (i. 51, 2). A tribe of Germans in Ariovistus' army who in Caesar's time seem to have lived east of the Rhine.

Nervii (ii. 4, 8; 15, 3; 16, 2; 17; 19, 2; 23, 4; 28, 1; 29, 1; 32, 2). A tribe of Belgic Gaul. When most of the other

Belgae surrendered to Caesar, the Nervii still held out under their chief Boduognatus. They were defeated by Caesar in a hard-fought battle on the banks of the Sabis (Sambre). Out of sixty thousand men only five hundred, according to Caesar, were left. Their country was south of the Menapii. Their chief town was Bagacum (now Bavai).

Noreia (i. 5, 3; *natio Norica*, i. 53, 4). Noreia was the ancient capital of the Taurisci, situated to the south of the Danube, north-west of Aquileia. It was besieged by the Boii in B.C. 59. From it the Roman province of Noricum, which was formed in B.C. 13, derived its name.

Noviodunum (ii. 12, 1). The capital of the Suessiones, which surrendered to Caesar in B.C. 57; probably the same as Augusta Suessionum (Soissons).

Numidae (ii. 7, 1; 10, 1; 24, 4). Inhabitants of Numidia in Africa. Numidians served as light-armed troops in Caesar's army.

Ocĕlum (i. 10, 5). A town on the extreme borders of Cisalpine Gaul in the north-west. From it Caesar had to fight his way through the mountainous tribes of the Graioceli, Ceutrones, and Caturiges. It is probably the modern Uxeau, east of Turin, though Ocelum seems to have been a common name in that neighbourhood.

Octodūrus (iii. 1, 4). A town situated north of the Great St. Bernard Pass, near the confluence of the Rhone and the Drance. Here Servius Galba was surprised by an attack of Gauls, whom he defeated. Its modern name is Martigny.

Osismi (ii. 34, 1; iii. 9, 10). A tribe of Celtic Gaul who joined the Veneti against Caesar, situated on the westernmost promontory of Gaul, now Bretagne.

Paemāni (ii. 4, 10). A tribe of Germans, situated near the valley of the Mosa (Meuse) amongst the Belgae, whose confederacy they joined.

Pictŏnes (iii. 11, 5). A tribe of Celtic Gaul on the coast south of the Liger (Loire). They supplied Caesar with ships against the Veneti. In B.C. 52 they joined Vercingetorix against Caesar. Their name survives in Poitou.

Ptianii (iii. 27, 1). A tribe of Aquitani who surrendered to P. Crassus. Their exact position is unknown.

Pyrenaei (i. 1, 6). The Pyrenees.

Raurici (i. 5, 3; 29, 2). A tribe of Celtic Gaul north of the Helvetii, in the neighbourhood of the modern Basle. They joined in the attempted migration of the Helvetii.

Redŏnes (ii. 34, 1). A tribe of Celtic Gaul situated near the Veneti. Their name survives in Rennes (anciently Condate).

Remi (ii. 3-7; 9, 4; 12, 1, 5; iii. 11, 2). A tribe of Belgic Gaul north of the sources of the Matrona (Marne). When the confederacy of the Belgae was formed against Caesar they held aloof from it, and allied themselves with Caesar, to whom they continued faithful until the end. Their name survives in the modern Rheims (anciently Durocortorum).

Rhenus. The Rhine, which formed the boundary between Gallia and Germania.

Rhodănus. The Rhone.

Rutēni (i. 45, 2). A tribe of Celtic Gaul, defeated in B.C. 121 by Q. Fabius Maximus, with the Arverni. In Caesar's time a part of their territory was included in the Provincia. Their name survives in the modern Rodez (anciently Legodunum).

Sabis (ii. 16, 1; 18, 1). The river Sambre, a tributary of the Mosa (Meuse). On its banks Caesar defeated the Nervii in B.C. 57.

Santŏnes (i. 10, 1; i. 11, 6; *Santoni*, iii. 11, 5). A tribe of Celtic Gaul on the coast north of the Garumna (Garonne). They furnished Caesar with ships against the Veneti. Their name survives in the modern Saintes (their ancient capital Mediolanum). The old French province too was called Saintonge. For the double form of their name cp. *Teutones, Teutoni.*

Sedūni (iii. 1, 1; 2, 1; 7, 1). A tribe of Celtic Gaul in the valley of the Upper Rhone. Servius Galba in B.C. 56 was sent to them to command the road over the Alps. Their name survives in the modern town called Sitten (Germ.) or Sion (Fr.).

Sedusii (i. 51, 2). A tribe of Germans who fought in Ariovistus' army. They are otherwise unknown.

Segusiavi (i. 10, 5). A tribe of Celtic Gaul west of the Rhodanus, bordering on the Provincia. In B.C. 43, Lugdunum (Lyons) was founded as a Roman colony in their territory by L. Munatius Plaucus.

Senŏnes (ii. 2, 3). An important tribe in Celtic Gaul who bordered on the Belgae. During Caesar's campaign against the Belgae they remained well disposed to him : in B.C. 53 and 52, however, they declared war against Caesar, but were reduced to submission. Their name survives in Sens, their capital (anciently Agedincum).

Sequăna (i. 1, 2). The river Seine, which for a part of its course formed the boundary between the Celtic Gauls and the Belgae.

Sequăni (i.). A powerful tribe of Celtic Gaul situated between Mount Jura and the Arar (Saône). Before Caesar's arrival in Gaul the Sequani, allied with the Arverni, had invited Ariovistus and his German troops to cross the Rhine and help them to conquer their rivals the Aedui. Ariovistus assented, and brought large bodies of men across. He first subdued the Aedui, and then turned his arms against the Sequani themselves. These he compelled to cede two-thirds of their territory, and oppressed in such a way, that, in 58 B.C., with the Aedui, they begged Caesar to attack Ariovistus. In 52 B.C., however, they sent contingents to fight against Caesar. Their chief town was Vesontio (Besançon).

Sibuzates (iii. 27, 1). A tribe of Aquitani who surrendered to P. Crassus. Their exact position is unknown. There is a town called Saubusse on the Adour, in the south-west of France, which perhaps retains their name.

Sontiătes (iii. 20, 2, 3; 21, 1, 2). A tribe of Aquitani near the Garumna (Garonne) defeated by P. Crassus, who besieged and captured the town to which they retired. Their name survives in the modern Sos (anciently Sotium).

Suebi (i. 37, 3, 4; 51, 2; 53, 4; 54, 1; *al. Suevi*). A generic name of various German tribes on the east of the Rhine, but used apparently by Caesar with special reference to some particular tribe, probably the Chatti.

Suessiones (ii. 3, 5; 4, 6; 12, 1, 4; 13, 1). A tribe of Belgic Gaul who were very closely connected with the Remi, living under the same laws with them. At the time of the confederacy of the Belgae, 57 B.C., however, when the Remi joined Caesar, the Suessiones joined the confederacy against him, and Caesar captured their capital Noviodunum (now called Soissons from the tribal name). In 52 they sent a small

contingent against Caesar, who made them tributary to the Remi.

Tarbelli (iii. 27, 1). A tribe of Aquitani who surrendered to P. Crassus. They extended southward to the river Aturis (Adour) and the Pyrenees.

Tarusates (iii. 23, 1; 27, 1). A tribe of Aquitani who surrendered to P. Crassus. Their name still survives in the town Tartas.

Teutŏni (i. 33, 4; 40, 5; ii. 4, 2; 29, 4; sometimes *Teutones*. Cp. *Santones, Santoni*). A powerful German tribe, who, in conjunction with the Cimbri, overran Cisalpine Gaul, and defeated several Roman armies, between 113 and 102 B.C. In 102 the Teutoni were defeated and cut to pieces by C. Marius at Aquae Sextiae (Aix).

Tigurīni (i. 12, 7; *pagus Tigurinus*, i. 12. 4). See *Helvetii*.

Tolōsa (iii. 20, 2; *Tolosates* (the inhabitants of Tolosa), i. 10, 1). A town on the Garumna (Garonne), in early time a wealthy and important place, belonging to the Volcae Tectosages. In Caesar's time it was included in the Provincia, very near its western boundary. P. Crassus summoned soldiers from it for his invasion of Aquitania. It is still called Toulouse.

Trevĕri (i. 37, 1, 3; ii. 24, 4; iii. 11, 1). A tribe that seems to have been in part at least of German origin, though settled on the west of the Rhine, in the valley of the Mosella (Moselle). In the war against the Nervii their cavalry formed part of Caesar's army, but deserted. Their name survives in the modern town Trèves (Fr.), or Trier (Germ.) (anciently Augusta Treverorum).

Triboces (i. 51, 2; elsewhere called *Triboci*. Cp. *Santones, Santoni*). A tribe of Germans who formed part of Ariovistus' army. In Caesar's time they were situated on the west of the Rhine near the Treveri.

Tulingi (i. 5, 3; 25, 5; 28, 3; 29, 2). Friends and allies of the Helvetii, who, like the Latovici, joined them in their attempted migration. They seem to have been Germans, but their position is unknown.

Turŏnes (ii. 35, 3; sometimes *Turoni*. Cp. *Santones, Santoni*). A tribe of Celtic Gaul situated on the Liger (Loire). Their

name still survives in the modern town Tours (anciently Caesarodunum) and in Touraine.

Vangiŏnes (i. 51, 2). A tribe of Germans who fought in Ariovistus' army. Situated on the west bank of the Rhine, their chief town was Borbetomagus (Worms).

Veliocasses (ii. 4, 9; elsewhere *Veliocassi*. Cp. *Santones*, *Santoni*). A tribe of Belgic Gaul who joined the confederacy of the Belgae against Caesar. Situated north of the Seine, their chief town was Rotomagus (Rouen).

Venelli (ii. 34, 1; iii. 11, 4; 17, 1). A tribe of Celtic Gaul on the west coast of Gaul (the modern Normandy). They joined in the general resistance of the states in those parts against Caesar. They had nominally submitted to P. Crassus in B.C. 57, and were completely defeated the next year by Q. Titurius Sabinus. Their leader was Viridovix.

Veneti (ii. 34, 1; iii. 7, 4; 8, 1; 9, 3; 11, 5; 16, 1; 17, 1; 18, 3); *Venetia*, the country of the Veneti (iii. 9, 9). A very important maritime state of Celtic Gaul on the west coast. They headed a resistance against Caesar in 56 B.C., who had to undertake a naval war with them. They were completely conquered, all their leading men put to death, and the rest sold as slaves. Their name survives in the modern town of Vannes, called provincially Guenet.

Veragri (iii. 1, 1; 2, 1). A tribe of Celtic Gaul, in the Alpine district south-east of the Lacus Lemannus. Their chief town was Octodurus (Martigny). Servius Galba was sent by Caesar into their country.

Verbigenus pagus (i. 27, 4). See *Helvetii*.

Vesontio (i. 38, 1; 39, 1). The chief town of the Sequani, captured by Caesar in B.C. 58. Its name survives as Besançon.

Viromandui (ii. 4, 9; 16, 2; 23, 3). A tribe of Belgic Gaul who joined the confederacy against Caesar. They were defeated with the Nervii in the battle on the Sabis (Sambre), B.C. 57.

Vocates (iii. 23, 1; 27, 1). A tribe of Aquitani who surrendered to P. Crassus. Their exact position is uncertain.

Vocontii (i. 10, 5). A tribe of Celtic Gaul south of the Allobroges, within the Provincia.

BIOGRAPHICAL.

Adiatunnus (iii. 22, 1, 4). A chief of the Sontiates: leader of a forlorn hope in a sortie against Crassus during the siege of their town.

Aemilius L. (i. 23, 2). A *decurio* of Caesar's cavalry. See note on *Army*, § 5 (*f*).

Andecumborius (ii. 3, 1). A chieftain of the Remi sent as ambassador to Caesar.

Ariovistus (i. 31-53). The great leader of the Germans in their migrations and campaigns to the west of the Rhine. Invited across the Rhine as an ally of the Sequani against their rivals the Aedui, Ariovistus first conquered these latter, and then used his power against the Sequani themselves. He seized a third of their territory, and soon after demanded another third. The campaign which Caesar undertook against Ariovistus at the request of the Aedui and Sequani, and the final victory of the Romans, are narrated at length in i. 30-54.

Baculus, P. Sextius (ii. 25, 1; iii. 5, 2). A centurion, *primipilus*, in Caesar's army (see note on *Army*, § 5 (*e*)), highly distinguished for his bravery.

Boduognatus (ii. 23, 4). A chieftain of the Nervii in command during the battle against the Romans.

Brutus, Decimus Junius (iii. 11, 5; 14, 3). An officer, whilst still a young man, in Caesar's army during the Gallic war. He was appointed to the chief command of the fleet in the war against the Veneti, B.C. 56. Subsequently, during the civil war between Caesar and Pompeius, he was appointed by Caesar to the command of the fleet besieging Massilia (Marseilles), which he captured. Caesar seems to have treated him with great friendship, and before his death had promised him the governorship of Cisalpine Gaul and the consulship for B.C. 42. He was named as an heir in Caesar's will. Notwithstanding this, he was persuaded by his relative M. Junius Brutus

to join the band of Caesar's assassins, and was specially chosen to escort him to the senate-house. After maintaining himself for a time in Cisalpine Gaul against M. Antonius, he crossed over into Macedonia, where he was deserted by his soldiers, betrayed by a Gallic chief Camillus, and put to death by the orders of M. Antonius in B.C. 43.

Caburus, C. Valerius (i. 47, 4). A Gallic chieftain, who had received the citizenship from C. Valerius Flaccus, and in accordance with custom had taken the name of C. Valerius.

Cassius L. See *Longinus.*

Casticus (i. 3, 4). An important person among the Sequani, son of Catamantaloedes.

Catamantaloedes (i. 3, 4). A chieftain of the Sequani, who had for many years held royal power, and had been styled "friend" by the Roman senate.

Cimberius (i. 37, 3). A chieftain of the Suebi.

Considius P. (i. 21, 4; 22, 1, 4). An experienced soldier in Caesar's army who had served under L. Sulla and M. Crassus.

Cotta, L. Aurunculeius (ii. 11, 3). A *legatus* in Caesar's army. Whilst in command with Sabinus of a detachment of soldiers between the Mosa (Meuse) and the Rhenus (Rhine), in B.C. 54, he was slain in a treacherous attack by the Gauls.

Crassus, M. Licinius (i. 21, 4). A wealthy Roman *eques*, who, with Caesar and Pompeius, was a member of the so-called first Triumvirate. For some time he held the balance of power between Caesar and Pompeius. Appointed governor of the province of Syria for five years, at the termination of his consulship, in B.C. 55, he headed an expedition into the territory of the Parthian king. At Carrhae in Mesopotamia his army was surrounded and cut to pieces, and Crassus himself was killed, B.C. 53.

Crassus, P. Licinius (i. 52, 6; ii. 34, 1; iii. 7-11; 20-27). A son of the triumvir M. Crassus, and one of Caesar's *legati* from B.C. 58 to 55. In this capacity he served against Ariovistus and the Veneti. His chief command, however was in Aquitania, where he obtained the surrender of all the important tribes. In B.C. 54 he joined his father the triumvir in Syria, and was slain with him at the battle of Carrhae.

Divico (i. 13, 2; 14, 6). A chieftain of the Helvetii, w'

in B.C. 107 was in command of his tribe, and defeated the Romans under L. Cassius. He headed the embassy which the Helvetii sent to Caesar to request a free passage through the Provincia.

Divitiacus (i. 3, 4; 16-20; 31, 3; 32, 1, 3; 41, 4; ii. 5, 2; 10, 5; 14, 1; 15, 1). A chieftain of the Aedui, a great friend of Caesar, and a strong supporter of the Roman cause. He headed the embassy of the Aedui and the Sequani in requesting Caesar's aid against Ariovistus and the Germans. He was a friend also of M. Tullius Cicero the orator, from whom we learn that he was a Druid.

Divitiacus (ii. 4, 7). A powerful king of the Suessiones, who had extended his authority over a large part of Gaul, and even into Britain.

Dumnorix (i. 3, 4; 9, 2, 3; 18, 1, 2, 6; 19, 3; 20, 6). A chieftain of the Aedui and brother of Divitiacus. Partly from ambitious designs of seizing the sovereignty, which made him jealous of his brother, Dumnorix sided with the Helvetii, and used all his influence to prevent the Aedui from furnishing Caesar with the supplies they had promised him. Although Caesar spared his life at the time owing to his brother's entreaties, on a subsequent attempt to leave the Roman camp with the cavalry of the Aedui he was overtaken and slain in B.C. 54.

Flaccus, C. Valerius (i. 47, 4). *Imperator* and *propraetor* of Gaul in B.C. 83.

Gabinius, Aulus (i. 6, 3). A Roman, whose entrance into public life as *tribunus plebis*, in B.C. 66, was marked by the important law known as the *Lex Gabinia*, which conferred upon Cn. Pompeius absolute powers in the Mediterranean and within fifty miles of the shore. These powers were given to him that he might attack and conquer the Cilician pirates, who interfered greatly with Roman commerce. In B.C. 61, Gabinius was praetor, and in 58 consul. In 57 he was proconsul of Syria, and engaged in war against Egypt. He was recalled in 55, and put upon his trial for various acts of misgovernment, and went into exile. In 49 he returned to Rome, and died in 48.

Galba (ii. 4, 7; 13, 1). King of the Suessiones, appointed chief of the confederacy of the Belgae in the war against the Romans.

Galba, Servius Sulpicius (iii. 1, 1, 4; 3, 1; 5, 2; 6, 4). One of Caesar's *legati*, sent with the twelfth legion, in the winter of B.C. 57, to the Nantuates, Veragri and Seduni, in order to keep the Great St. Bernard Pass open. He was attacked, however, and with difficulty extricated himself. In B.C. 54 he was in Rome, and elected *praetor*. In 49 he was rejected for the consulship. He is said to have been one of Caesar's assassins.

Gallus, M. Trebius (iii. 7, 4). An officer in Caesar's army, sent as an ambassador to the Curiosolitae, by whom he was arrested.

Iccius (ii. 3, 1; 6, 4; 7, 1). A chieftain of the Remi, who defended Bibrax against an attack of the Belgae.

Labienus T. (i. 10, 3; 21, 2; 22, 1, 3; 54, 3; ii. 1, 1; 11, 3; iii. 11, 1). One of Caesar's *legati*, who was with Caesar during almost the whole of the Gallic war, and distinguished himself by his energy and bravery, especially in the latter part of the war. In B.C. 50 Caesar left him in command in Cisalpine Gaul. Labienus, however, perhaps from jealousy, joined the side of Pompeius when the civil war between him and Caesar broke out. He fought against Caesar's army in Greece, in Africa, and finally in Spain. Here, at the battle of Munda, in 45 B.C., he was killed.

Liscus (i. 16, 4; 17, 1; 18, 1). A chief magistrate or vergobret of the Aedui in the year 59 B.C. He joined with Divitiacus in representing to Caesar that the delay of the Aedui in sending to Caesar the provisions they had promised was due to the intrigues of Dumnorix.

Longinus, L. Cassius (i. 7, 4; 12, 5, 7). *Praetor* in B.C. 111, he was sent to Africa to convey Jugurtha to Rome with a safe conduct. He was elected consul in B.C. 107, as colleague of C. Marius, and received Gallia Narbonensis (Provincia) as his province. Here, in a war with the Helvetii, he was killed by the Tigurini, and his army sent under the yoke. Caesar made this one of the pretexts for his campaign against the Helvetii.

Mallius L. (iii. 20, 1). Proconsul of Gallia Narbonensis in B.C. 78. He was defeated by the officers of Q. Sertorius in Aquitania.

Marius C. (i. 40, 5). The great rival of L. Cornelius Sulla.

Born in B.C. 157, near Arpinum, he early won distinction for himself as a soldier. In Spain he served under Scipio Africanus, and was present at the siege of Numantia, where he won the approval of his general. Elected in 119 to the tribuneship of the plebs, he obtained the support of the people. In 109 he went to Africa as the *legatus* of Q. Caecilius Metellus, the consul in command of the army against king Jugurtha. From Africa he returned to Rome, and was elected consul in B.C. 107, much to the displeasure of Metellus and the nobility of Rome. He received from the people the command in Numidia, and in the year 106 B.C. Jugurtha was betrayed by Bocchus into the power of Marius, who sent L. Sulla to receive him. His next command was against the Cimbri and Teutones, who were threatening North Italy, and who had already defeated several Roman generals. These he overthrew and completely destroyed in the two great battles of Aquae Sextiae (B.C. 102) and Campi Raudii, probably near Vercellae (B.C. 101). For the purpose of this war he had been elected consul for four consecutive years, from 104—101, and was again elected in B.C. 100. The remainder of his life was spent in political struggles : Marius for the most part representing the popular party against Sulla, the supporter of the senate. The quarrel was fought, however, not by constitutional methods, but by armed force and illegal violence. In 88 B.C. Sulla marched at the head of his army against Rome, where Marius opposed his entry. Sulla entered the city victoriously, and Marius left Rome. After wandering for some time and suffering great hardships in Italy and the neighbourhood of Carthage, he returned to Rome during the absence of Sulla in the East. Marius and Cinna now for a short time were supreme in Rome, during a part of 87 and 86, and were elected consuls for 86. Their power they used with the utmost violence and cruelty. Marius died early in 86.

Maximus, Q. Fabius (i. 45, 2). Elected consul in B.C. 121, he defeated the Allobroges, the Ruteni, and the Arverni under their king Bituitus at the junction of the Isara (Isère) and the Rhodanus (Rhone), killing a large number of the enemy, and taking Bituitus in triumph to Rome. In consequence of this he gained the surname of Allobrogicus.

Messala M. (i. 2, 1; 35, 4). Consul in B.C. 61. An orator of some importance.

Metius M. (i. 47, 4; 53, 8). An officer in Caesar's army who was sent on an embassy to Ariovistus and detained by him. On the defeat of Ariovistus he was however recovered and restored to Caesar.

Nammeius (i. 7, 3). One of the Helvetii sent as ambassador to Caesar to demand a free passage through the Province.

Nasua (i. 37, 3). A chieftain of the Suebi, brother of Cimberius.

Orgetorix (i. 2-4; 9, 3; 26, 5). A man of high rank and great riches among the Helvetii. In hopes of gaining kingly power for himself, in B.C. 61 he endeavoured to persuade the Helvetii to leave their homes and seek a new country for themselves, and meanwhile tried to strengthen his own position by alliances with other chiefs. His design, however, was discovered; he was arrested and brought to trial. By arming his clients and debtors he evaded justice, and before the Helvetii could use armed force against him he died. He was suspected of having committed suicide.

Pedius Q. (ii. 2, 1; 11, 3). A *legatus* of Caesar. He was, according to Suetonius, the grandson of Caesar's sister Julia. When the civil war between Caesar and Pompeius broke out Pedius naturally sided with Caesar. In 45 he served as *legatus* against the army of Pompeius in Spain; and was named as one of Caesar's heirs. He was elected consul with Octavius in B.C. 43, and died in the same year.

Piso, M. Calpurnius (i. 2, 1; 1, 35, 4). Consul in 61 B.C. He had been just previously serving as *legatus* in Pompeius' army against king Mithridates.

Piso, L. Calpurnius (i. 6, 3; 12, 7). Consul in 58 B.C. A great enemy of Cicero, who describes his character in very bitter terms. During his consulship Cicero was banished from Rome in consequence of the enmity of Clodius. Caesar married Calpurnia, the daughter of Piso, and although at the outbreak of the civil war Piso left Rome with Pompeius, he soon returned, and was treated with respect by Caesar.

Piso, L. Calpurnius (i. 12, 7). Grandfather of the preceding; a *legatus* in the army of L. Cassius in 107 B.C. He fell with his general in the battle against the Helvetii.

Praeconinus, L. Valerius (iii. 20, 1). A Roman general, killed in the war against Sertorius in 78 B.C.

Procillus, C. Valerius (i. 19, 3; 47, 4; 53, 5). A Gaul, the son of C. Valerius Caburus. He was a confidential friend of Caesar, and acted as his interpreter in his interview with Divitiacus, and was sent on an embassy to Ariovistus, who detained him. On the defeat of Ariovistus he was restored to the Romans, much to Caesar's delight.

Sabinus, Q. Titurius (ii. 5, 6; iii. 11, 4; 17-19). A *legatus* of Caesar. In B.C. 56 he was sent in command of three legions against the Venelli, whilst Caesar himself was engaged in the naval war against the Veneti. Here he was completely successful, conquering the enemy under their general Viridovix, and receiving the submission of all the neighbouring states. In B.C. 54 he was slain with Cotta in an unexpected attack by Gauls between the Mosa (Meuse) and Rhenus (Rhine).

Sertorius Q. (iii. 23, 5). A Roman who, in the earlier part of his life, won fame as a general fighting for Rome. He was present at the victory of Marius at Aquae Sextiae, and served with distinction in Spain. In the civil war between Sulla and Marius, Sertorius took the popular side with Cinna and Marius against Sulla. In consequence of this, when Sulla returned to Rome in B.C. 83, Sertorius left the city and retired to Spain. Here he made himself powerful, and gained great popularity amongst the natives. He engaged in war against Rome for eight years (80-72), at first with considerable success: even Pompeius made but little head against him. At last, however, in B.C. 72, he was assassinated by conspirators amongst his Roman officers, headed by Perperna.

Servius Galba. See *Galba.*

Sextius Baculus. See *Baculus.*

Silius T. (iii. 7, 4; 8, 2). An officer in Caesar's army sent as ambassador to the Veneti, by whom he was arrested.

Sulla, L. Cornelius (i. 21, 4). Born B.C. 138, Sulla first came into notice when serving in Africa, in 107, as *quaestor* in the army of C. Marius. He was deputed by Marius to receive Jugurtha from the hands of Bocchus, king of Mauretania. He served also under Marius against the Cimbri and Teutones, B.C. 104-102, where he is said to have excited Marius' jealousy by

his successes. In 93 he was elected *praetor* at Rome, and from this time he stood forward as the champion of the senatorial privileges, in strong rivalry with Marius. During the social war (90-89) his military achievements quite eclipsed those of Marius, who was very half-hearted in this war. In 88 Sulla was elected consul, but was driven out of the city by the armed violence of Marius. Sulla put himself at the head of his army, and marched with it against Rome, and in his turn drove Marius out, making himself master of the city. In 87 he started for the East to take the command in the war against Mithridates; this he brought to an end in 84, having compelled Mithridates to sue for peace. Meanwhile, during his absence, his rivals Cinna and Marius had acquired once more supreme power in Rome. Marius died in 86, and Cinna was murdered in 83, but their party still determined to oppose Sulla's return, afraid of the vengeance he would take on them. Accordingly Sulla marched a second time against Rome at the head of an armed force, and entered the city in 82. From that time until his voluntary retirement in 79, he was practically master of Rome. Elected in 81 to a dictatorship, an office which he was to hold as long as he liked, he carried various important laws, tending mostly to the increase of the power of the senate and the weakening of that of the people. In 79 he resigned the dictatorship, and retired to Puteoli, where he died in 78.

Terrasidius T. (iii. 7, 4; 8, 3). An officer in Caesar's army, sent as ambassador to the Esubii, by whom he was arrested.

Titurius Sabinus, Q. See *Sabinus.*

Trebius Gallus, M. See *Gallus.*

Valerius Caburus, C. See *Caburus.*

Valerius Flaccus, C. See *Flaccus.*

Valerius Praeconinus, L. See *Praeconinus.*

Valerius Procillus, C. See *Procillus.*

Velanius Q. (iii. 7, 4; 8, 2). An officer in Caesar's army sent as ambassador to the Veneti, by whom he was arrested.

Verucloetius (i. 7, 3). One of the Helvetii sent as ambassador to Caesar to demand a free passage through the Province.

Viridovix (iii. 17, 2, 3, 5). Chief of the Venelli, who was in command of them and their allies when Q. Titurius Sabinus attacked them. He was defeated by Sabinus.

Voccio (i. 53, 4). King in Noricum, brother-in-law of Ariovistus.

Volusenus C. (iii. 5, 2). A *tribunus militum* in Caesar's army in Gaul. See note on *Army*, § 5 (*d*). He afterwards fought in the civil war for Caesar against Pompeius.

SELECT INDEX TO NOTES.

don, Oxford & Cambridge.
Stanford's Geographical Estabt.

LIST OF MAPS AND PLANS.

Educational Works

Scenes from Greek Plays.

Rugby Edition. By ARTHUR SIDGWICK, M.A., Assistant-Master at Rugby School.

Small 8vo. 1s. 6d. *each.*

ARISTOPHANES.
THE CLOUDS. THE FROGS. THE KNIGHTS. PLUTUS.

EURIPIDES.
IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS. THE CYCLOPS. ION. ELECTRA. ALCESTIS. BACCHÆ. HECUBA.

Homer's Iliad.

Edited, with Notes, at the end, for the use of Junior Students, by ARTHUR SIDGWICK, M.A.

Small 8vo.

Books I. and II. 2s. 6d.

Cicero de Amicitiâ.

Edited, with Notes and an Introduction, by ARTHUR SIDGWICK, M.A.

Small 8vo. 2s.

An Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.

By ARTHUR SIDGWICK, M.A.

Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 5s.

A KEY, for the use of Tutors only, 5s.

Selections from Lucian.

With English Notes. By EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A., LL.D., Fellow and Tutor of Balliol College, Oxford.

Second Edition. Small 8vo. 3s. 6d.

The Elements of Greek Accidence.

With Philological Notes. By EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A., LL.D.

Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

A Primer of Greek Accidence.

For the Use of Schools. By EVELYN ABBOTT, M.A., LL.D.; and E. D. MANSFIELD, M.A., Assistant-Master at Clifton College. With a Preface by JOHN PERCIVAL, M.A., LL.D., President of Trinity College, Oxford.

Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

Stories from Ovid in Elegiac Verse.

By R. W. TAYLOR, M.A., Head-Master of Kelly College, Tavistock.

New Edition. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

The Anabasis of Xenophon.

Edited, with Notes and Vocabularies by R. W. TAYLOR, M.A.

Crown 8vo.

Books I. and II. 3s. 6d.
Books III. and IV. 3s. 6d.

First Latin Writer.

Comprising Accidence, the Easier Rules of Syntax illustrated by copious Examples, and Progressive Exercises in Elementary Latin Prose, with Vocabularies. By G. L. BENNETT, M.A., Head-Master of the High School, Plymouth; formerly Assistant-Master at Ruby School.

Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

A KEY, for the use of Tutors only, 5s

Easy Latin Stories for Beginners.

With Notes and Vocabularies, by G. L. BENNETT, M.A.

Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

A KEY, for the use of Tutors only. 5s.

Arnold's Henry's First Latin Book.

A New and Revised Edition. *12mo.* 3s. By C. G. GEPP, M.A., Head-Master of King Edward VI. School, Stratford-upon-Avon.

A KEY, for the use of Tutors only, 5s.

[The original Edition of this work is still kept on sale.]

Progressive Exercises in Latin Elegiac Verse.

By C. G. GEPP, M.A.

Fourth Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d. *Tutor's KEY*, 5s.

The Æneid of Vergil.

Edited, with Notes at the end, by FRANCIS STORR, M.A., Chief Master of Modern Subjects at Merchant Taylors' School, late Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge.

Crown 8vo.

Books I. and II. 2s. 6d.
Books XI. and XII. 2s. 6d.

The Beginner's Drill-book of English Grammar. Adapted for Middle Class and Elementary Schools. By JAMES BURTON, T.C.D., First English Master in the High School of the Liverpool Institute.

Small 8vo. 1s. 6d.

La Fontaine's Fables. Books I. and II. Edited, with English Notes at the end, for use in Schools, by the Rev. P. BOWDEN-SMITH, M.A., Assistant-Master at Rugby School.

Small 8vo. 2s.

Selections from Modern French Authors. Edited, with English Notes and Introductory Notice, by HENRI VAN LAUN.

Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d. *each.*

HONORÉ DE BALZAC.
H. A. TAINE.

Lessing's Fables. Arranged in order of difficulty. Forming a First German Reading Book. With Notes, Introduction, and Vocabularies, by F. STORR, M.A.

Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

Selections from Hauff's Stories. A First German Reading Book for Schools. Edited by W. E. MULLINS, M.A., Assistant-Master at Marlborough College, and F. STORR, M.A.

Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

A German Accidence, for the Use of Schools. By J. W. J. VECQUERAY, Assistant-Master at Rugby School.

New Edition, Revised. 4to. 3s. 6d.

German Exercises. Adapted to Vecqueray's "German Accidence for the Use of Schools." By E. F. GRENFELL, M.A., late Assistant-Master at Rugby School.

Crown 8vo.

Part I. 2s. Part II. [illegible]

Select Plays of Shakspere. Rugby Edition.

Small 8vo.

AS YOU LIKE IT. 2s.
MACBETH. 2s.
HAMLET. 2s. 6d.
KING LEAR. 2s. 6d.
Edited by the Rev. CHARLES E. MOBERLY, M.A., Assistant-Master at Rugby School.

CORIOLANUS. 2s. 6d.
Edited by ROBERT WHITELAW, M.A., Assistant-Master at Rugby School.

THE TEMPEST. 2s.
Edited by J. SURTEES PHILLPOTTS M.A., Head-Master of Bedford Grammar School.

A History of England. By the Rev. J. FRANCK BRIGHT, M.A., Fellow of University College, Oxford.

With numerous Maps and Plans.
Second Edition. Crown 8vo.

Period I.—MEDIÆVAL MONARCHY: The Departure of the Romans to Richard III. A.D. 449—1485. 4s. 6d.

Period II.—PERSONAL MONARCHY: Henry VII. to James II. A.D. 1485—1688. 5s.

Period III.—CONSTITUTIONAL MONARCHY: William and Mary to the Present Time. A.D. 1689—1837. 7s. 6d.

Historical Biographies. Edited by the Rev. M. CREIGHTON, M.A., late Fellow and Tutor of Merton College, Oxford.

With Maps and Plans. Small 8vo.

SIMON DE MONTFORT. 2s. 6d.
THE BLACK PRINCE. 2s. 6d.
SIR WALTER RALEGH. 3s.
THE DUKE OF WELLINGTON. 3s. 6d.
THE DUKE OF MARLBOROUGH. 3s. 6d.

A Year's Botany. Adapted to Home and School Use. By [illegible]HENER.

[illegible] *Author.*

[illegible]*n 8vo.* 5s.